WORLD INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY ORGANIZATION International Bureau



INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

(51) International Patent Classification 7: C07K 5/083, A61K 38/06, C12P 41/00,

A2

(11) International Publication Number:

WO 00/09543

(43) International Publication Date:

24 February 2000 (24.02.00)

(21) International Application Number:

C07K 5/087, C07C 229/48

PCT/CA99/00736

(22) International Filing Date:

9 August 1999 (09.08.99)

(30) Priority Data:

60/095,931 60/132,386 10 August 1998 (10.08.98)

US

4 May 1999 (04.05.99)

(74) Agent: BERNIER, Louise, G.; Boehringer Ingelheim (Canada) Ltd., Patent Department, 2100 Cunard Street, Laval, Québec H7S 2G5 (CA).

Jean [CA/CA]; 6400 de l'Aiglon, Laval, Québec H7L

4W2 (CA). TSANTRIZOS, Youla, S. [CA/CA]; 1590 Champigny, Saint-Laurent, Québec H4L 4P7 (CA). WER-

NIC, Dominik, M. [CA/CA]; 900 des Giroflées, Laval, Québec H7X 3G5 (CA). SIMONEAU, Bruno [CA/CA]; 2615 de la volière, Laval, Québec H7L 3V6 (CA).

(71) Applicant (for all designated States except BOEHRINGER INGELHEIM (CANADA) LTD. [CA/CA]; 2100 Cunard Street, Laval, Québec H7S 2G5 (CA).

(72) Inventors; and

(75) Inventors/Applicants (for US only): LLINAS-BRUNET. Montse [CA/CA]; 14 Rushbrooke, Dollard-Des-Ormeaux, Québec H9B 3K6 (CA). BAILEY, Murray, D. [CA/CA]; 344 Groulx, Pierrefonds, Québec H8Y 1B3 (CA). CAMERON, Dale [CA/CA]; 493 de l'Érablière, Rosemère, Québec J7A 4M4 (CA). FAUCHER, Anne-Marie [CA/CA]: 11 Lefebvre North, Oka, Québec JON 1E0 (CA). GHIRO, Elise [CA/CA]; 768 Pierre, Laval, Québec H7X 3L8 (CA). GOUDREAU, Nathalie [CA/CA]; 416 Graham, Mont-Royal, Québec H3P 2C9 (CA). HALMOS, Teddy [CA/CA]; 1935 Jean Picard #8, Laval, Québec H7T 2K4 (CA). POUPART, Marc-André [CA/CA]; 101 Aimé Séguin, Vimont, Québec H7M 1B3 (CA). RANCOURT,

(81) Designated States: AE, AL, AM, AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BR, BY, CA, CH, CN, CU, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, GB, GD, GE, GH, GM, HR, HU, ID, IL, IN, IS, JP, KE, KG, KP, KR, KZ, LC, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LV, MD, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, NO, NZ, PL, PT, RO, RU, SD, SE, SG, SI, SK, SL, TJ, TM, TR, TT, UA, UG, US, UZ, VN, YU, ZA, ZW, ARIPO patent (GH, GM, KE, LS, MW, SD, SL, SZ, UG, ZW), Eurasian patent (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European patent (AT, BE, CH, CY, DE, DK, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, GW, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).

Published

Without international search report and to be republished upon receipt of that report.

(54) Title: HEPATITIS C INHIBITOR TRI-PEPTIDES

(57) Abstract

Racemates, diastereoisomers and optical isomers of a compound of formula (I) wherein B is H, a C₆ or C₁₀ aryl, C₇₋₁₆ aralkyl; Het or (lower alkyl)-Het, all of which optionally substituted with C1-6 alkyl; C_{1-6} alkoxy; C_{1-6} alkanoyl; hydroxy; hydroxyalkyl; halo; haloalkyl; nitro; cyano; cyanoalkyl; amino optionally substituted with C1-6 alkyl; amido; or (lower alkyl)amide; or B is an acyl derivative of formula $R_4-C(O)$ -; a carboxyl of formula $R_4-O-C(O)$ -; an amide of formula R4-N(R5)-C(O)-; a thioamide of formula R₄-N(R₅)-C(S)-; or a sulfonyl of formula R₄-SO₂; R₅ is H or C₁₋₆ alkyl; and Y is H or C₁₋₆ alkyl; R³ is C₁₋₈ alkyl, C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl, or C₄₋₁₀ alkylcycloalkyl, all optionally substituted with hydroxy, C1-6 alkoxy, C1-6

$$\begin{array}{c|c}
B & & \\
N &$$

thioalkyl, amido, (lower alkyl)amido, C6 or C10 aryl, or C7-16 aralkyl; R2 is CH2-R20, NH-R20, O-R200r S-R20, wherein R20 is a saturated or unsaturated C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl or C₄₋₁₀ (alkylcycloalkyl), all of which being optionally mono-, di- or tri-substituted with R₂₁, or R₂₀ is a C₆ or C₁₀ aryl or C₇₋₁₄ aralkyl optionally substituted, or R₂₀ is Het or (lower alkyl)-Het, both optionally substituted, Het or (lower alkyl)-Het; carboxyl; carboxy(lower alkyl); C6 or C10 aryl, C7-14 aralkyl or Het, said aryl, aralkyl or Het being optionally substituted; and R1 is H; C₁₋₆ alkyl, C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl, C₂₋₆ alkenyl, or C₂₋₆ alkynyl, all optionally substituted with halogen; or a pharmaceutically acceptable sait or ester thereof.

FOR THE PURPOSES OF INFORMATION ONLY

Codes used to identify States party to the PCT on the front pages of pamphlets publishing international applications under the PCT.

AL	Albania	ES	Spain	LS	Lesotho	SI	Slavesia
AM	Armenia	FI	Finland	LT LT			Slovenia
					Lithuania	SK	Slovakia
AT	Austria	FR	France	LU	Luxembourg	SN	Senegal
AU	Australia	GA	Gabon	LV	Latvia	SZ	Swaziland
AZ	Azerbaijan	GB	United Kingdom	MC	Monaco	TD	Chad
BA	Bosnia and Herzegovina	GE	Georgia	MD	Republic of Moldova	TG	Togo
BB	Barbados	GH	Ghana	MG	Madagascar	ТJ	Tajikistan
BE	Belgium	GN	Guinea	MK	The former Yugoslav	TM	Turkmenistan
BF	Burkina Faso	GR	Greece		Republic of Macedonia	TR	Turkey
BG	Bulgaria	HU	Hungary	ML	Mali	TT	Trinidad and Tobago
BJ	Benin	IE	Ireland	MN	Mongolia	UA	Ukraine
BR	Brazil	IL	[srae]	MR	Mauritania	UG	Uganda
BY	Belarus	IS	Iceland	MW	Malawi	US	United States of America
CA	Canada	IТ	Italy	MX	Mexico	UZ	Uzbekistan
CF	Central African Republic	JP	Japan	NE	Niger	VN	Vict Nam
CG	Congo	KE	Kenya	NL	Netherlands	YU	Yugoslavia
CH	Switzerland	KG	Kyrgyzstan	NO	Norway	zw	Zimbabwe
CI	Côte d'Ivoire	KP	Democratic People's	NZ	New Zealand		
CM	Cameroon		Republic of Korea	PL	Poland		
CN	China	KR	Republic of Korea	PT	Portugal		
CU	Cuba	KZ	Kazakstan	RO	Romania		
CZ	Czech Republic	LC	Saint Lucia	RU	Russian Federation		
DE	Germany	LI	Liechtenstein	SD	Sudan		
DK	Denmark	LK	Sri Lanka	SE	Sweden		
EE	Estonia	LR	Liberia	SG	Singapore		

WO 00/09543 PCT/CA99/00736

HEPATITIS C INHIBITOR TRI-PEPTIDES

FIELD OF THE INVENTION

5

20

25

30

The present invention relates to compounds, process for their synthesis, compositions and methods for the treatment of hepatitis C virus (HCV) infection. In particular, the present invention provides novel peptide analogs, pharmaceutical compositions containing such analogs and methods for using these analogs in the treatment of HCV infection. The present invention also provides processes and intermediates for the synthesis of these peptide analogs.

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

Hepatitis C virus (HCV) is the major etiological agent of post-transfusion and community-acquired non-A non-B hepatitis worldwide. It is estimated that over 150 million people worldwide are infected by the virus. A high percentage of carriers become chronically infected and many progress to chronic liver disease, so-called chronic hepatitis C. This group is in turn at high risk for serious liver disease such as liver cirrhosis, hepatocellular carcinoma and terminal liver disease leading to death.

The mechanism by which HCV establishes viral persistence and causes a high rate of chronic liver disease has not been thoroughly elucidated. It is not known how HCV interacts with and evades the host immune system. In addition, the roles of cellular and humoral immune responses in protection against HCV infection and disease have yet to be established. Immunoglobulins have been reported for prophylaxis of transfusion-associated viral hepatitis, however, the Center for Disease Control does not presently recommend immunoglobulins treatment for this purpose. The lack of an effective protective immune response is hampering the development of a vaccine or adequate post-exposure prophylaxis measures, so in the near-term, hopes are firmly pinned on antiviral interventions.

Various clinical studies have been conducted with the goal of identifying pharmaceutical agents capable of effectively treating HCV infection in patients afflicted with chronic hepatitis C. These studies have involved the use of interferonalpha, alone and in combination with other antiviral agents. Such studies have shown that a substantial number of the participants do not respond to these therapies, and of those that do respond favorably, a large proportion were found to relapse after termination of treatment.

WO 00/09543 PCT/CA99/00736

2

Until recently, interferon (IFN) was the only available therapy of proven benefit approved in the clinic for patients with chronic hepatitis C. However the sustained response rate is low, and interferon treatment also induces severe side-effects (i.e. retinopathy, thyroiditis, acute pancreatitis, depression) that diminish the quality of life of treated patients. Recently, interferon in combination with ribavirin has been approved for patients non-responsive to IFN alone. However, the side effects caused by IFN are not alleviated with this combination therapy.

5

10

15

20

25

30

Therefore, a need exists for the development of effective antiviral agents for treatment of HCV infection that overcomes the limitations of existing pharmaceutical therapies.

HCV is an enveloped positive strand RNA virus in the Flaviviridae family. The single strand HCV RNA genome is approximately 9500 nucleotides in length and has a single open reading frame (ORF) encoding a single large polyprotein of about 3000 amino acids. In infected cells, this polyprotein is cleaved at multiple sites by cellular and viral proteases to produce the structural and non-structural (NS) proteins. In the case of HCV, the generation of mature nonstructural proteins (NS2, NS3, NS4A, NS4B, NS5A, and NS5B) is effected by two viral proteases. The first one, as yet poorly characterized, cleaves at the NS2-NS3 junction; the second one is a serine protease contained within the N-terminal region of NS3 (henceforth referred to as NS3 protease) and mediates all the subsequent cleavages downstream of NS3, both in cis, at the NS3-NS4A cleavage site, and in trans, for the remaining NS4A-NS4B, NS4B-NS5A, NS5A-NS5B sites. The NS4A protein appears to serve multiple functions, acting as a cofactor for the NS3 protease and possibly assisting in the membrane localization of NS3 and other viral replicase components. The complex formation of the NS3 protein with NS4A seems necessary to the processing events, enhancing the proteolytic efficiency at all of the sites. The NS3 protein also exhibits nucleoside triphosphatase and RNA helicase activities. NS5B is a RNA-dependent RNA polymerase that is involved in the replication of HCV.

A general strategy for the development of antiviral agents is to inactivate virally encoded enzymes that are essential for the replication of the virus. In this vein, patent application WO 97/06804 describes the (-) enantiomer of the nucleoside analogue cytosine-1,3-oxathiolane (also known as 3TC) as active against HCV. This compound, although reported as safe in previous clinical trials against HIV and HBV, has yet to be clinically proven active against HCV and its mechanism of action

10

against the virus has yet to be reported.

Intense efforts to discover compounds which inhibit the NS3 protease or RNA helicase of HCV have led to the following disclosures:

- US patent 5,633,388 describes heterocyclic-substituted carboxamides and analogues as being active against HCV. These compounds are directed against the helicase activity of the NS3 protein of the virus but clinical tests have not yet been reported.
 - A phenanthrenequinone has been reported by Chu et al., (Tet. Lett., (1996), 7229-7232) to have activity against the HCV NS3 protease in vitro. No further development on this compound has been reported.
 - A paper presented at the Ninth International Conference on Antiviral Research, Urabandai, Fukyshima, Japan (1996) (Antiviral Research, (1996), 30, 1, A23 (abstract 19)) reports thiazolidine derivatives to be inhibitory to the HCV protease.
- Several studies have reported compounds inhibitory to other serine proteases, such as human leukocyte elastase. One family of these compounds is reported in WO 95/33764 (Hoechst Marion Roussel, 1995). The peptides disclosed in this application are morpholinylcarbonyl-benzoyl-peptide analogues that are structurally different from the peptides of the present invention.
- WO 98/17679 from Vertex Pharmaceuticals Inc. discloses inhibitors of serine protease, particularly, Hepatitis C virus NS3 protease. These inhibitors are peptide analogues based on the NS5A/5B natural substrate. Although several tripeptides are disclosed, all of these peptide analogues contain C-terminal activated carbonyl function as an essential feature. These analogues were also reported to be active against other serine protease and are therefore not specific for HCV NS3 protease.
 - Hoffman LaRoche has also reported hexapeptides that are proteinase inhibitors useful as antiviral agents for the treatment of HCV infection. These peptides contain an aldehyde or a boronic acid at the C-terminus.
- Steinkühler et al. and Ingallinella et al. have published on NS4A-4B product inhibition (Biochemistry (1998), 37, 8899-8905 and 8906-8914). However, the peptides and peptide analogues presented do not include nor do they lead to the

design of the peptides of the present invention.

One advantage of the present invention is that it provides tripeptides that are inhibitory to the NS3 protease of the hepatitis C virus.

A further advantage of one aspect of the present invention resides in the fact that these peptides specifically inhibit the NS3 protease and do not show significant inhibitory activity at concentrations up to 300 µM against other serine proteases such as human leukocyte elastase (HLE), porcine pancreatic elastase (PPE), or bovine pancreatic chymotrypsin, or cysteine proteases such as human liver cathepsin B (Cat B).

A further advantage of the present invention is that it provides small peptides of low molecular weight that may be capable of penetrating cell membranes and may be active in cell culture and *in vivo* with good pharmacokinetic profile.

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

20

25

Included in the scope of the invention are racemates, diastereoisomers and optical isomers of a compound of formula (I):

wherein **B** is H, a C_6 or C_{10} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl; Het or (lower alkyl)-Het, all of which optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl; C_{1-6} alkoxy; C_{1-6} alkanoyl; hydroxy; hydroxyalkyl; halo; haloalkyl; nitro; cyano; cyanoalkyl; amino optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl; amido; or (lower alkyl)amide;

or B is an acyl derivative of formula R_4 -C(O)-; a carboxyl of formula R_4 -O-C(O)-; an amide of formula R_4 -N(R_5)-C(O)-; a thioamide of formula R_4 -N(R_5)-C(S)-; or a sulfonyl of formula R_4 -SO₂ wherein

 $\mathbf{R_4}$ is (i) $\mathbf{C_{1-10}}$ alkyl optionally substituted with carboxyl, $\mathbf{C_{1-6}}$ alkanoyl, hydroxy, $\mathbf{C_{1-6}}$ alkoxy, amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with $\mathbf{C_{1-6}}$ alkyl, amido, or (lower alkyl) amide;

10

- (ii) C_{3-7} cycloalkyl, C_{3-7} cycloalkoxy, or C_{4-10} alkylcycloalkyl, all optionally substituted with hydroxy, carboxyl, (C_{1-6} alkoxy)carbonyl, amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, amido, or (lower alkyl) amide; (iii) amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl; amido; or (lower alkyl)amide;
- (iv) C_6 or C_{10} aryl or $C_{7\text{--}16}$ aralkyl, all optionally substituted with $C_{1\text{--}6}$ alkyl, hydroxy, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, or amino optionally mono- or disubstituted with $C_{1\text{--}6}$ alkyl; or
- (v) Het or (lower alkyl)-Het, both optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, hydroxy, amido, (lower alkyl) amide, or amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl;

R₅ is H or C₁₋₆ alkyl;

with the proviso that when $\mathbf{R_4}$ is an amide or a thioamide, $\mathbf{R_4}$ is not (ii) a cycloalkoxy; and

15 Y is H or C₁₋₆ alkyl;

 ${f R}^3$ is C_{1-8} alkyl, C_{3-7} cycloalkyl, or C_{4-10} alkylcycloalkyl, all optionally substituted with hydroxy, C_{1-6} alkoxy, C_{1-6} thioalkyl, amido, (lower alkyl)amido, C_6 or C_{10} aryl, or C_{7-16} aralkyl;

R₂ is CH₂-R₂₀, NH-R₂₀, O-R₂₀ or S-R₂₀, wherein R₂₀ is a saturated or unsaturated C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl or C₄₋₁₀ (alkylcycloalkyl), all of which being optionally mono-, di- or trisubstituted with R₂₁,

or R_{20} is a C_6 or C_{10} aryl or C_{7-14} aralkyl, all optionally mono-, di- or tri-substituted with R_{21} ,

or R_{20} is Het or (lower alkyl)-Het, both optionally mono-, di- or tri-substituted with R_{21} ,

wherein each \mathbf{R}_{21} is independently C_{1-6} alkyl; C_{1-6} alkoxy; lower thioalkyl; sulfonyl; NO_2 ; OH; SH; halo; haloalkyl; amino optionally mono- or di-

substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, C_6 or C_{10} aryl, C_{7-14} aralkyl, Het or (lower alkyl)-Het;

amido optionally mono-substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, C_6 or C_{10} aryl, C_{7-14} aralkyl, Het or (lower alkyl)-Het;

25

carboxyl; carboxy(lower alkyl); C_6 or C_{10} aryl, C_{7-14} aralkyl or Het, said aryl, aralkyl or Het being optionally substituted with \mathbf{R}_{22} ;

wherein \mathbf{R}_{22} is C_{1-6} alkyl; C_{3-7} cycloalkyl; C_{1-6} alkoxy; amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl; sulfonyl; (lower alkyl)sulfonyl; NO_2 ; OH; SH; halo; haloalkyl; carboxyl; amide; (lower alkyl)amide; or Het optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl

 \mathbf{R}^1 is H, C₁₋₆ alkyl, C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl, C₂₋₆ alkenyl, or C₂₋₆ alkynyl, all optionally substituted with halogen;

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or ester thereof.

Included within the scope of this invention is a pharmaceutical composition comprising an anti-hepatitis C virally effective amount of a compound of formula I, or a therapeutically acceptable salt or ester thereof, in admixture with a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier medium or auxiliary agent.

An important aspect of the invention involves a method of treating a hepatitis C viral infection in a mammal by administering to the mammal an anti-hepatitis C virally effective amount of the compound of formula I, or a therapeutically acceptable salt or ester thereof or a composition as described above.

Another important aspect involves a method of inhibiting the replication of hepatitis C virus by exposing the virus to a hepatitis C viral NS3 protease inhibiting amount of the compound of formula I, or a therapeutically acceptable salt or ester thereof or a composition as described above.

Still another aspect involves a method of treating a hepatitis C viral infection in a mammal by administering thereto an anti-hepatitis C virally effective amount of a combination of the compound of formula I, or a therapeutically acceptable salt or ester thereof. According to one embodiment, the pharmaceutical compositions of this invention comprise an additional immunomodulatory agent. Examples of additional immunomodulatory agents include but are not limited to, α -, β -, and δ -interferons.

DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF PREFERRED EMBODIMENTS

30 **Definitions**

5

15

20

25

As used herein, the following definitions apply unless otherwise noted:

With reference to the instances where (R) or (S) is used to designate the configuration of a substituent, e.g. R^1 of the compound of formula I, the designation is done in the context of the compound and not in the context of the substituent alone.

- The natural amino acids, with exception of glycine, contain a chiral carbon atom.

 Unless otherwise specifically indicated, the compounds containing natural amino acids with the L-configuration are preferred. However, applicants contemplate that when specified, some amino acids of the formula I can be of either D- or L-configuration or can be mixtures of D- and L-isomers, including racemic mixtures.
- The designation "P1, P2 and P3" as used herein refer to the position of the amino acid residues starting from the C-terminus end of the peptide analogues and extending towards the N-terminus [i.e. P1 refers to position 1 from the C-terminus, P2: second position from the C-terminus, etc.) (see Berger A. & Schechter I., Transactions of the Royal Society London series (1970), B257, 249-264].
- 15 The abbreviations for the α -amino acids used in this application are set forth in Table A.

TABLE A

Amino Acid	Symbol
1-aminocyclopropyl-carboxylic acid	Acca
Alanine	Ala
Aspartic acid	Asp
Cysteine	Cys
Cyclohexylglycine (also named: 2-amino-2-cyclohexylacetic acid)	Chg
Glutamic acid	Glu
Isoleucine	lle
Leucine	Leu
Phenylalanine	Phe
Proline	Pro

Amino Acid	Symbol		
Valine	Val		
tert-Butylglycine	Tbg		

As used herein the term "1-aminocyclopropyl-carboxylic acid" (Acca) refers to a compound of formula:

As used herein the term "tert-butylglycine" refers to a compound of formula:

5

10

15

The term "residue" with reference to an amino acid or amino acid derivative means a radical derived from the corresponding α -amino acid by eliminating the hydroxyl of the carboxy group and one hydrogen of the α -amino group. For instance, the terms Gln, Ala, Gly, Ile, Arg, Asp, Phe, Ser, Leu, Cys, Asn, Sar and Tyr represent the "residues" of L-glutamine, L-alanine, glycine, L-isoleucine, L-arginine, L-aspartic acid, L-phenylalanine, L-serine, L-leucine, L-cysteine, L-asparagine, sarcosine and L-tyrosine, respectively.

The term "side chain" with reference to an amino acid or amino acid residue means a group attached to the α -carbon atom of the α -amino acid. For example, the R-group side chain for glycine is hydrogen, for alanine it is methyl, for valine it is isopropyl. For the specific R-groups or side chains of the α -amino acids reference is made to A.L. Lehninger's text on Biochemistry (see chapter 4).

The term "halo" as used herein means a halogen substituent selected from bromo, chloro, fluoro or iodo.

The term "C₁₋₆ alkyl" or "(lower)alkyl" as used herein, either alone or in combination with another substituent, means acyclic, straight or branched chain alkyl substituents

15

containing from 1 to six carbon atoms and includes, for example, methyl, ethyl, propyl, butyl, *tert*-butyl, hexyl, 1-methylethyl, 1-methylpropyl, 2-methylpropyl, 1,1-dimethylethyl.

The term "C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl" as used herein, either alone or in combination with another substituent, means a cycloalkyl substituent containing from three to seven carbon atoms and includes cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl and cycloheptyl. This term also includes "spiro"-cyclic group such as spiro-cyclopropyl or spirocyclobutyl:

10 The term "unsaturated cycloalkyl" includes, for example, cyclohexenyl:

The term "C₄₋₁₀ (alkylcycloalkyl) as used herein means a cycloalkyl radical containing from three to seven carbon atoms linked to an alkyl radical, the linked radicals containing up to ten carbon atoms; for example, cyclopropylmethyl, cyclopentylethyl, cyclohexylmethyl, cyclohexylethyl or cycloheptylethyl.

The term " C_{2-10} alkenyl" as used herein, either alone or in combination with another radical, means an alkyl radical as defined above containing from 2 to 10 carbon atoms, and further containing at least one double bond. For example alkenyl includes allyl and vinyl.

The term "C₁₋₆ alkanoyl" as used herein, either alone or in combination with another radical, means straight or branched 1-oxoalkyl radicals containing one to six carbon atoms and includes formyl, acetyl, 1-oxopropyl (propionyl), 2-methyl-1-oxopropyl, 1-oxohexyl and the like.

The term "C₁₋₆ alkoxy" as used herein, either alone or in combination with another radical, means the radical –O(C₁₋₆ alkyl) wherein alkyl is as defined above containing up to six carbon atoms. Alkoxy includes methoxy, ethoxy, propoxy, 1-methylethoxy, butoxy and 1,1-dimethylethoxy. The latter radical is known commonly as *tert*-butoxy.

15

25

The term " C_{3-7} cycloalkoxy" as used herein, either alone or in combination with another radical, means a C_{3-7} cycloalkyl group linked to an oxygen atom, such as, for example:

The term "C₆ or C₁₀ aryl" as used herein, either alone or in combination with another radical, means either an aromatic monocyclic group containing 6 carbon atoms or an aromatic bicyclic group containing 10 carbon atoms. For example, aryl includes phenyl, 1-naphthyl or 2-naphthyl.

The term " C_{7-16} aralkyl" as used herein, either alone or in combination with another radical, means a C_6 or C_{10} aryl as defined above linked to an alkyl group, wherein alkyl is as defined above containing from 1 to 6 carbon atoms. C_{7-16} aralkyl includes for example benzyl, butylphenyl, and 1-naphthylmethyl.

The term "amino aralkyl" as used herein, either alone or in combination with another radical, means an amino group substituted with a C₇₋₁₆ aralkyl group, such as, for example, the amino aralkyl:

The term "(lower alkyl)amide" as used herein, either alone or in combination with another radical, means an amide mono-substituted with a C_{1-6} alkyl, such as:

The term "carboxy(lower)alkyl" as used herein, either alone or in combination with another radical, means a carboxyl group (COOH) linked through a (lower)alkyl group as defined above and includes for example butyric acid.

The term "heterocycle" or "Het" as used herein, either alone or in combination with another radical, means a monovalent radical derived by removal of a hydrogen from a five-, six-, or seven-membered saturated or unsaturated (including aromatic) heterocycle containing from one to four heteroatoms selected from nitrogen, oxygen and sulfur. Furthermore, "Het" as used herein, means a heterocycle as defined

25

above fused to one or more other cycle, be it a heterocycle or any other cycle. Examples of suitable heterocycles include: pyrrolidine, tetrahydrofuran, thiazolidine, pyrrole, thiophene, diazepine, 1H-imidazole, isoxazole, thiazole, tetrazole, piperidine, 1,4-dioxane, 4-morpholine, pyridine, pyrimidine, thiazolo[4,5-b]-pyridine, quinoline, or indole, or the following heterocycles:

The term "(lower alkyl)-Het" as used herein, means a heterocyclic radical as defined above linked through a chain or branched alkyl group, wherein alkyl is as defined above containing from 1 to 6 carbon atoms. Examples of (lower alkyl)-Het include:

The term "pharmaceutically acceptable ester" as used herein, either alone or in combination with another substituent, means esters of the compound of formula I in which any of the carboxyl functions of the molecule, but preferably the carboxy terminus, is replaced by an alkoxycarbonyl function:

in which the **R** moiety of the ester is selected from alkyl (e.g. methyl, *n*-propyl, t-butyl, *n*-butyl); alkoxyalkyl (e.g. methoxymethyl); alkoxyacyl (e.g. acetoxymethyl); aralkyl (e.g. benzyl); aryloxyalkyl (e.g. phenoxymethyl); aryl (e.g. phenyl), optionally substituted with halogen, C₁₋₄ alkyl or C₁₋₄ alkoxy. Other suitable prodrug esters can be found in Design of prodrugs, Bundgaard, H. Ed. Elsevier (1985) incorporated herewith by reference. Such pharmaceutically acceptable esters are usually hydrolyzed *in vivo* when injected in a mammal and transformed into the acid form of the compound of formula I.

With regard to the esters described above, unless otherwise specified, any alkyl moiety present advantageously contains 1 to 16 carbon atoms, particularly 1 to 6 carbon atoms. Any aryl moiety present in such esters advantageously comprises a phenyl group.

20

In particular the esters may be a C_{1-16} alkyl ester, an unsubstituted benzyl ester or a benzyl ester substituted with at least one halogen, C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{1-6} alkoxy, nitro or trifluoromethyl.

The term "pharmaceutically acceptable salt" as used herein includes those derived from pharmaceutically acceptable bases. Examples of suitable bases include choline, ethanolamine and ethylenediamine. Na⁺, K⁺, and Ca⁺⁺ salts are also contemplated to be within the scope of the invention (also see Pharmaceutical salts, Birge, S.M. et al., J. Pharm. Sci., (1977), <u>66</u>, 1-19, incorporated herein by reference).

Preferred embodiments

- Included within the scope of this invention are compounds of formula I wherein Preferably, **B** is a C₆ or C₁₀ aryl or C₇₋₁₆ aralkyl, all optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, C₁₋₆ alkoxy, C₁₋₆ alkanoyl, hydroxy, hydroxyalkyl, halo, haloalkyl, nitro, cyano, cyanoalkyl, amido, (lower alkyl)amido, or amino optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl; or
- B is preferably Het or (lower alkyl)-Het, all optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, C₁₋₆ alkoxy, C₁₋₆ alkanoyl, hydroxy, hydroxyalkyl, halo, haloalkyl, nitro, cyano, cyanoalkyl, amido, (lower alkyl)amido, or amino optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl.
 - Alternatively, **B** is preferably R_4 -SO₂ wherein R_4 is preferably C_{1-6} alkyl; amido; (lower alkyl)amide; C_6 or C_{10} aryl, C_{7-14} aralkyl or Het, all optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl.
 - Alternatively, **B** is preferably an acyl derivative of formula R_4 -C(O)- wherein R_4 is preferably
 - (i) C_{1-10} alkyl optionally substituted with carboxyl, hydroxy or C_{1-6} alkoxy, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, or amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl;
- (ii) C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl or C₄₋₁₀ alkylcycloalkyl, both optionally substituted with hydroxy, carboxyl, (C₁₋₆ alkoxy)carbonyl, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, or amino optionally monoor di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl;
 - (iv) C_6 or C_{10} aryl or C_{7-16} aralkyl, all optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, hydroxy, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, or amino optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl;
- 30 (v) Het or (lower alkyl)-Het, both optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, hydroxy, amino optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, or amino optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl.

Alternatively, **B** is preferably a carboxyl of formula R_4 -O-C(O)-, wherein R_4 is preferably

- (i) C_{1-10} alkyl optionally substituted with carboxyl, C_{1-6} alkanoyl, hydroxy, C_{1-6} alkoxy, amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, amido or (lower alkyl)amide;
- 5 (ii) C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl, C₄₋₁₀ alkylcycloalkyl, all optionally substituted with carboxyl, (C₁₋₆ alkoxy)carbonyl, amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, amido or (lower alkyl)amide;
 - (iv) C_6 or C_{10} aryl or C_{7-16} aralkyl optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, hydroxy, amido, (lower alkyl)amido, or amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl; or
- 10 (v) Het or (lower alkyl)-Het, both optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, hydroxy, amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, amido or (lower alkyl)amido.

Alternatively, **B** is preferably an amide of formula R_4 -N(R_5)-C(O)- wherein R_4 is preferably

- (i) C₁₋₁₀ alkyl optionally substituted with carboxyl, C₁₋₆ alkanoyl, hydroxy, C₁₋₆ alkoxy, amido, (lower alkyl)amido, or amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl;
 (ii) C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl or C₄₋₁₀ alkylcycloalkyl, all optionally substituted with carboxyl, (C₁₋₆ alkoxy)carbonyl, amido, (lower alkyl)amido, or amino optionally mono- or disubstituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl;
 - (iii) amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₃ alkyl;
- (iv) C₆ or C₁₀ aryl or C₇₋₁₆ aralkyl, all optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, hydroxy, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, or amino optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl; or (v) Het or (lower alkyl)-Het, both optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, hydroxy, amino optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, amido or (lower alkyl)amide; and R₅ is preferably H or methyl.
- 25 Alternatively, **B** is a preferably thioamide of formula **R**₄-NH-C(S)-; wherein **R**₄ is preferably
 - (i) C_{1-10} alkyl optionally substituted with carboxyl, C_{1-6} alkanoyl or C_{1-6} alkoxy; (ii) C_{3-7} cycloalkyl or C_{4-10} alkylcycloalkyl, all optionally substituted with carboxyl, (C_{1-6}
 - alkoxy)carbonyl, amino or amido.
- More preferably, **B** is a C₆ or C₁₀ aryl optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, C₁₋₆ alkoxy, C₁₋₆ alkanoyl, hydroxy, hydroxyalkyl, halo, haloalkyl, nitro, cyano, cyanoalkyl, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, or amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, such that **B** is for example:

or **B** is more preferably Het optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, C₁₋₆ alkoxy, C₁₋₆ alkanoyl, hydroxy, halo, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, or amino optionally mono- or disubstituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, such that **B** is for example:

Alternatively, **B** is more preferably **R**₄-SO₂ wherein **R**₄ is preferably C₆ or C₁₀ aryl, a C₇₋₁₄ aralkyl or Het all optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl; amido, (lower alkyl)amide, such that **B** is, for example:

Alternatively, **B** is more preferably an acyl derivative of formula R_4 -C(O)- wherein R_4 is preferably

(i) C₁₋₁₀ alkyl optionally substituted with carboxyl, hydroxy or C₁₋₆ alkoxy; or
 (ii) C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl or C₄₋₁₀ alkylcycloalkyl, both optionally substituted with hydroxy, carboxyl, (C₁₋₆ alkoxy)carbonyl, such that **B** is, for example:

or R4 is preferably

(iv) C_6 or C_{10} aryl or C_{7-16} aralkyl, all optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, hydroxy, such that **B** is for example:

or R4 is preferably

(v) Het optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, hydroxy, amido or amino, such that ${\bf B}$ is for example:

10

5

Alternatively, **B** is more preferably a carboxyl of formula $\mathbf{R_4}\text{-O-C(O)-}$, wherein $\mathbf{R_4}$ is preferably

- (i) C_{1-10} alkyl optionally substituted with carboxyl, C_{1-6} alkanoyl, hydroxy, C_{1-6} alkoxy or amido, (lower alkyl)amide, amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl;
- (ii) C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl, C₄₋₁₀ alkylcycloalkyl, all optionally substituted with carboxyl, (C₁₋₆ alkoxy)carbonyl, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, such that B is for example:

or R4 is preferably

10

15

(iv) C_6 or C_{10} aryl or C_{7-16} aralkyl, all optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, hydroxy, amino optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl; or

5 (v) Het or (lower alkyl)-Het, both optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, hydroxy, amido, or amino optionally mono-substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, such that **B** is for example:

Alternatively, **B** is more preferably an amide of formula R_4 -N(R_5)-C(O)- wherein R_4 is preferably

(i) C_{1-10} alkyl optionally substituted with carboxyl, C_{1-6} alkanoyl, hydroxy, C_{1-6} alkoxy, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl; (ii) C_{3-7} cycloalkyl or C_{4-10} alkylcycloalkyl, all optionally substituted with carboxyl, (C_{1-6} alkoxy)carbonyl, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, amino optionally mono- or di-substituted

R₅ is H or methyl, such that B is for example:

or R4 is preferably

with C1-6 alkyl; and

(iii) amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₃ alkyl, such that **B** is for example:

or R4 is preferably

- (iv) C_6 or C_{10} aryl or C_{7-16} aralkyl, all optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, hydroxy, amino or amido optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl; or
- 25 (v) Het optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, hydroxy, amino or amido, such that B is

for example:

10

15

Alternatively, $\bf B$ is more preferably a thioamide of formula $\bf R_4$ -NH-C(S)-; wherein $\bf R_4$ is preferably

5 \mathbf{R}_4 is (i) \mathbf{C}_{1-10} alkyl; or (ii) \mathbf{C}_{3-7} cycloalkyl, such that \mathbf{B} is for example:

Most preferably, **B** is an amide of formula R_4 -NH-C(O)- wherein R_4 is preferably (i) C_{1-10} alkyl optionally substituted with carboxyl, C_{1-6} alkanoyl, hydroxy, C_{1-6} alkoxy amido, (lower alkyl)amide, amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl; (ii) C_{3-7} cycloalkyl or C_{4-10} alkylcycloalkyl, all optionally substituted with carboxyl, (C_{1-6} alkoxy)carbonyl, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl;

or R4 is preferably

(iv) C_6 or C_{10} aryl or C_{7-16} aralkyl optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, hydroxy, amino or amido, such that **B** is for example:

15

20

Even most preferably, B is tert-butoxycarbonyl (Boc) or

Preferably, Y is H or methyl. More preferably, Y is H.

Preferably, \mathbf{R}^3 is C_{1-8} alkyl, C_{3-7} cycloalkyl, or C_{4-10} alkylcycloalkyl, all optionally substituted with hydroxy, C_{1-6} alkoxy, C_{1-6} thioalkyl, acetamido, C_6 or C_{10} aryl, or C_{7-16} aralkyl, such that \mathbf{B} is for example:

More preferably, R³ is the side chain of *tert*-butylglycine (Tbg), Ile, Val, Chg or:

10 Most preferably, R³ is the side chain of Tbg, Chg or Val.

Included within the scope of the invention are compounds of formula I wherein, preferably, R_2 is S- R_{20} or O- R_{20} wherein R_{20} is preferably a C_6 or C_{10} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, Het or -CH₂-Het, all optionally mono-, di- or tri-substituted with R_{21} .

Preferably, $\mathbf{R_{21}}$ is C_{1-6} alkyl; C_{1-6} alkoxy; lower thioalkyl; amino or amido optionally mono-or di-substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, C_6 or C_{10} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, Het or (lower alkyl)-Het; NO_2 ; OH; halo; trifluoromethyl; carboxyl; C_6 or C_{10} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, or Het, said aryl, aralkyl or Het being optionally substituted with $\mathbf{R_{22}}$. More preferably, $\mathbf{R_{21}}$ is C_{1-6} alkyl; C_{1-6} alkoxy; amino; di(lower alkyl)amino; (lower alkyl)amide; C_6 or C_{10} aryl, or Het, said aryl or Het being optionally substituted with $\mathbf{R_{22}}$.

Preferably, R_{22} is C_{1-6} alkyl; C_{3-7} cycloalkyl; C_{1-6} alkoxy; amino; monoor di-(lower alkyl)amino; (lower alkyl)amide; sulfonylalkyl; NO_2 ; OH;

halo; trifluoromethyl; carboxyl or Het. More preferably, \mathbf{R}_{22} is C_{1-6} alkyl; C_{3-7} cycloalkyl; C_{1-6} alkoxy; amino; mono- or di(lower alkyl)amino; amido; (lower alkyl)amide; halo; trifluoromethyl or Het. Most preferably, \mathbf{R}_{22} is C_{1-6} alkyl; C_{1-6} alkoxy; halo; amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with lower alkyl; amido; (lower alkyl)amide; or Het. Even most preferably, \mathbf{R}_{22} is methyl; ethyl; isopropyl; tert-butyl; methoxy; chloro; amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with lower alkyl; amido, (lower alkyl)amide; or (lower alkyl) 2-thiazole.

Alternatively, R2 is preferably selected from the group consisting of:

10

15

5

More preferably, R_2 is 1-naphthylmethoxy; 2-naphthylmethoxy; benzyloxy, 1-naphthyloxy; 2-naphthyloxy; or quinolinoxy unsubstituted, mono- or di-substituted with R_{21} as defined above. Most preferably, R_2 is 1-naphtylmethoxy; or quinolinoxy unsubstituted, mono- or di-substituted with R_{21} as defined above, such that R_2 is for example:

Still, more preferably, R2 is:

More preferably, \mathbf{R}_{21A} is \mathbf{C}_{1-6} alkyl such as isopropyl, tert-butyl or cyclohexyl;

15

lower thioalkyl such as

halo such as chloro;

amino optionally mono-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl; or C₆ or C₁₀ aryl, such that R_{21A} is for example: dimethylamino, Ph-N(Me)-;

unsubstituted C_6 or C_{10} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, such as for example phenyl or 5 or R_{21A} is more preferably Het optionally substituted with R_{22} wherein R_{22} is C_{1-6} alkyl, C₁₋₆ alkoxy, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, or Het, such that R_{21A} is for example:

Most preferably, R_{21A} is C_6 , C_{10} aryl or Het, all optionally substituted with R_{22} as defined above, such that R21A is for example:

Even most preferably, R₂ is:

$$R_{22A}$$
 R_{21B}
 R_{21B}
 R_{21B}
 R_{21B}

wherein R_{22A} is preferably C_{1-6} alkyl (such as methyl); C_{1-6} alkoxy (such as methoxy); or halo (such as chloro); R_{22B} is preferably C_{1-6} alkyl, amino optionally monosubstituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, amido, or (lower alkyl)amide; and R_{21B} is preferably C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{1-6} alkoxy, amino, di(lower alkyl)amino, (lower alkyl)amide, NO_2 , OH, halo, trifluoromethyl, or carboxyl. More preferably, R_{21B} is C_{1-6} alkoxy, or di(lower alkyl)amino. Most preferably, R_{21B} is methoxy.

As described hereinabove the P1 segment of the compounds of formula I is a cyclobutyl or cyclopropyl ring, both optionally substituted with R_1 .

5

Preferably, R¹ is H, C₁₋₃ alkyl, C₃₋₅ cycloalkyl, or C₂₋₄ alkenyl optionally substituted with halo. More preferably R¹ is ethyl, vinyl, cyclopropyl, 1 or 2-bromoethyl or 1 or 2-bromovinyl. Most preferably, R₁ is vinyl.

When R_1 is not H, then P1 is preferably a cyclopropyl system of formula:

$$\begin{array}{c} R_1 \\ C_2 \\ C_1 \\ O \end{array}$$

wherein C₁ and C₂ each represent an asymmetric carbon atom at positions 1 and 2 of the cyclopropyl ring. Notwithstanding other possible asymmetric centers at other segments of the compounds of formula I, the presence of these two asymmetric centers means that the compounds of formula I can exist as racemic mixtures of diastereoisomers. As illustrated in the examples hereinafter, the racemic mixtures can be prepared and thereafter separated into individual optical isomers, or these optical isomers can be prepared by chiral synthesis.

Hence, the compound of formula I can exist as a racemic mixture of diastereoisomers at carbon 1 but wherein R_1 at carbon 2 is orientated syn to the

10

15

carbonyl at position 1, represented by the radical:

$$R_1$$
 R_1 R_1 R_1 R_2 R_3 R_4 R_4 R_4 R_5 R_4 R_5 R_4 R_5 R_5

or the compound of formula I can exist as a racemic mixture of diastereoisomers wherein \mathbf{R}_1 at position 2 is orientated *anti* to the carbonyl at position 1, represented by the radical:

In turn, the racemic mixtures can be separated into individual optical isomers.

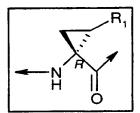
A most interesting finding of this invention pertains to the addition of a R_1 substituent on the carbon 2 as well as the spatial orientation of the P1 segment. The finding concerns the configuration of the asymmetric carbon 1. A preferred embodiment is one wherein R_1 is not H and carbon 1 has the R configuration.

$$= \text{either of} \qquad \qquad \begin{array}{c} R_1 \\ R_1 \\ R_2 \\ R_3 \\ R_4 \\ R_4 \\ R_5 \\ R_4 \\ R_5 \\ R_6 \\ R_7 \\ R_7 \\ R_8 \\ R_9 \\ R_9$$

More explicitly, the introduction of a substituent (R_1) at C2 has an impact on the potency when R_1 is introduced in a way that C1 has the R configuration. For example compounds **901** (1R,2S) and **203** (1R,2R) have activities of 25 and 82 nM respectively. When compared to the unsubstituted cyclopropyl compound **111** (475 nM), a substantial increase in potency is observed. Moreover, as shown for

compounds **901** and **203** when carbon 1 has the R configuration, HCV NS3 protease inhibition is further enhanced by the configuration of the substituent R_1 (e.g. alkyl or alkylene) at carbon 2 of the cyclopropyl ring, e.g. the compound that possesses R_1 "syn" to the carboxyl has greater potency (25 nM) than the "anti" enantiomer (82 nM). We can see the effect of the R vs. S configuration at C1 by comparing compounds **801** (1R,2S) and its corresponding (1S,2S) isomer which have potencies of 6 nM and >10 μ M respectively, a difference of over 1500 fold!!

Therefore a most preferred compound is an optical isomer having the R_1 substituent and the carbonyl in a syn orientation in the following absolute configuration:



10

15

20

25

5

In the case where R_1 is ethyl, for example, the asymmetric carbon atoms at positions 1 and 2 have the R,R configuration.

Included within the scope of this invention are compounds of formula I wherein

B is a C_6 or C_{10} aryl or C_{7-16} aralkyl, all optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{1-6} alkoxy, C_{1-6} alkanoyl, hydroxy, hydroxyalkyl, halo, haloalkyl, nitro, cyano, cyanoalkyl, amido, (lower alkyl)amido, or amino optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl; or Het or (lower alkyl)-Het, all optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{1-6} alkoxy, C_{1-6} alkanoyl, hydroxy, hydroxyalkyl, halo, haloalkyl, nitro, cyano, cyanoalkyl, amido, (lower alkyl)amido, or amino optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, or

B is R_4 -SO₂ wherein R_4 is preferably amido; (lower alkyl)amide; C_6 or C_{10} aryl, C_{7-14} aralkyl or Het, all optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, or

B is an acyl derivative of formula R₄-C(O)- wherein R₄ is

- (i) C_{1-10} alkyl optionally substituted with carboxyl, hydroxy or C_{1-6} alkoxy, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, or amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl;
- (ii) C_{3-7} cycloalkyl or C_{4-10} alkylcycloalkyl, both optionally substituted with hydroxy, carboxyl, (C_{1-6} alkoxy)carbonyl, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, or amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl;
- (iv) C_6 or C_{10} aryl or $C_{7\text{--}16}$ aralkyl, all optionally substituted with $C_{1\text{--}6}$ alkyl,

25

- hydroxy, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, or amino optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl;
- (v) Het or (lower alkyl)-Het, both optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, hydroxy, amino optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, or amino optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, or

B is a carboxyl of formula R_4 -O-C(O)-, wherein R_4 is

- (i) C_{1-10} alkyl optionally substituted with carboxyl, C_{1-6} alkanoyl, hydroxy, C_{1-6} alkoxy, amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, amido or (lower alkyl)amide;
- (ii) C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl, C₄₋₁₀ alkylcycloalkyl, all optionally substituted with carboxyl, (C₁₋₆ alkoxy)carbonyl, amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, amido or (lower alkyl)amide;
 - (iv) C_6 or C_{10} aryl or $C_{7\text{-}16}$ aralkyl optionally substituted with $C_{1\text{-}6}$ alkyl, hydroxy, amido, (lower alkyl)amido, or amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with
- 15 C₁₋₆ alkyl; or
 (v) Het or (lower alkyl)-Het, both optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, hydroxy, amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, amido or (lower alkyl)amido, or

${\bf B}$ is an amide of formula ${\bf R_4}$ -N(${\bf R_5}$)-C(O)- wherein ${\bf R_4}$ is

- 20 (i) C₁₋₁₀ alkyl optionally substituted with carboxyl, C₁₋₆ alkanoyl, hydroxy, C₁₋₆ alkoxy, amido, (lower alkyl)amido, or amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl;
 - (ii) C_{3-7} cycloalkyl or C_{4-10} alkylcycloalkyl, all optionally substituted with carboxyl, (C_{1-6} alkoxy)carbonyl, amido, (lower alkyl)amido, or amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl;
 - (iii) amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₃ alkyl;
 - (iv) C_6 or C_{10} aryl or C_{7-16} aralkyl, all optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, hydroxy, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, or amino optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl; or
- (v) Het or (lower alkyl)-Het, both optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, hydroxy, amino optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, amido or (lower alkyl)amide; and R₅ is preferably H or methyl, or
 - **B** is thioamide of formula R_4 -NH-C(S)-; wherein R_4 is

- (i) C_{1-10} alkyl optionally substituted with carboxyl, C_{1-6} alkanoyl or C_{1-6} alkoxy;
- (ii) C_{3-7} cycloalkyl or C_{4-10} alkylcycloalkyl, all optionally substituted with carboxyl, (C_{1-6} alkoxy)carbonyl, amino or amido;

Y is H or methyl;

10

15

25

5 **R**³ is C₁₋₈ alkyl, C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl, or C₄₋₁₀ alkylcycloalkyl, all optionally substituted with hydroxy, C₁₋₆ alkoxy, C₁₋₆ thioalkyl, acetamido, C₆ or C₁₀ aryl, or C₇₋₁₆ aralkyl;

 R_2 is S- R_{20} or O- R_{20} wherein R_{20} is preferably a C_6 or C_{10} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, Het or - CH₂-Het, all optionally mono-, di- or tri-substituted with R_{21} , wherein

 $\mathbf{R_{21}}$ is C_{1-6} alkyl; C_{1-6} alkoxy; lower thioalkyl; amino or amido optionally monoor di-substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, C_6 or C_{10} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, Het or (lower alkyl)-Het; NO_2 ; OH; halo; trifluoromethyl; carboxyl; C_6 or C_{10} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, or Het, said aryl, aralkyl or Het being optionally substituted with $\mathbf{R_{22}}$, wherein

 R_{22} is C_{1-6} alkyl; C_{3-7} cycloalkyl; C_{1-6} alkoxy; amino; mono- or di-(lower alkyl)amino; (lower alkyl)amide; sulfonylalkyl; NO_2 ; OH; halo; trifluoromethyl; carboxyl or Het; or

R₂ is selected from the group consisting of:

or **R₂** is 1-naphthylmethoxy; 2-naphthylmethoxy; benzyloxy, 1-naphthyloxy; 2-naphthyloxy; or quinolinoxy unsubstituted, mono- or di-substituted with **R₂₁** as defined above;

the **P1** segment is a cyclobutyl or cyclopropyl ring, both optionally substituted with $\mathbf{R_1}$, wherein $\mathbf{R^1}$ is H, C_{1-3} alkyl, C_{3-5} cycloalkyl, or C_{2-4} alkenyl optionally substituted with halo, and said $\mathbf{R_1}$ at carbon 2 is orientated *syn* to the carbonyl at position 1, represented by the radical:

10

15

20

26

Included within the scope of this invention are compounds of formula I wherein **B** is a C_6 or C_{10} aryl optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{1-6} alkoxy, C_{1-6} alkanoyl, hydroxy, hydroxyalkyl, halo, haloalkyl, nitro, cyano, cyanoalkyl, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, or amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl; or **B** is Het optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{1-6} alkoxy, C_{1-6} alkanoyl, hydroxy, halo, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, or amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl; or **B** is R_4 - SO_2 wherein R_4 is C_6 or C_{10} aryl, a C_{7-14} aralkyl or Het all optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl; amido, (lower alkyl)amide; or **B** is an acyl derivative of formula R_4 -C(O)- wherein R_4 is

- (i) C₁₋₁₀ alkyl optionally substituted with carboxyl, hydroxy or C₁₋₆ alkoxy; or
- (ii) C_{3-7} cycloalkyl or C_{4-10} alkylcycloalkyl, both optionally substituted with hydroxy, carboxyl, (C_{1-6} alkoxy)carbonyl; or
- (iv) C_6 or C_{10} aryl or $C_{7\text{--}16}$ aralkyl, all optionally substituted with $C_{1\text{--}6}$ alkyl, hydroxy; or
- (v) Het optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, hydroxy, amido or amino; or **B** is a carboxyl of formula R_4 -O-C(O)-, wherein R_4 is
 - (i) C_{1-10} alkyl optionally substituted with carboxyl, C_{1-6} alkanoyl, hydroxy, C_{1-6} alkoxy or amido, (lower alkyl)amide, amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl;
 - (ii) C_{3-7} cycloalkyl, C_{4-10} alkylcycloalkyl, all optionally substituted with carboxyl, $(C_{1-6}$ alkoxy)carbonyl, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl; or
- (iv) C₆ or C₁₀ aryl or C₇₋₁₆ aralkyl, all optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, hydroxy, amino optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl; or
 - (v) Het or (lower alkyl)-Het, both optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, hydroxy, amido, or amino optionally mono-substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl;

10

20

25

or ${\bf B}$ is an amide of formula ${\bf R_4}\text{-N}({\bf R_5})\text{-C}(O)$ - wherein ${\bf R_4}$ is

- (i) C_{1-10} alkyl optionally substituted with carboxyl, C_{1-6} alkanoyl, hydroxy, C_{1-6} alkoxy, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl;
- (ii) C_{3-7} cycloalkyl or C_{4-10} alkylcycloalkyl, all optionally substituted with carboxyl, (C_{1-6} alkoxy)carbonyl, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl; and R_5 is H or methyl; or R_4 is (iii) amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C_{1-3} alkyl; or (iv) C_6 or C_{10} aryl or C_{7-16} aralkyl, all optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, hydroxy, amino or amido optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl; or (v) Het optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, hydroxy, amino or amido; or

B is a thioamide of formula R_4 -NH-C(S)-; wherein R_4 is:

(i) C₁₋₁₀ alkyl; or (ii) C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl; or

B is an amide of formula R₄-NH-C(O)- wherein R₄ is

- i) C₁₋₁₀ alkyl optionally substituted with carboxyl, C₁₋₆ alkanoyl, hydroxy, C₁₋₆ alkoxy amido, (lower alkyl)amide, amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl;
 - (ii) C_{3-7} cycloalkyl or C_{4-10} alkylcycloalkyl, all optionally substituted with carboxyl, (C_{1-6} alkoxy)carbonyl, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl;
 - (iv) C_6 or C_{10} aryl or C_{7-16} aralkyl optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, hydroxy, amino or amido:

Y is H.:

R³ is the side chain of tert-butylglycine (Tbg), Ile, Val, Chg or:

 R_2 is 1-naphtylmethoxy; or quinolinoxy unsubstituted, mono- or di-substituted with R_{21} as defined above, or

R₂ is:

wherein R_{21A} is C_{1-6} alkyl; C_{1-6} alkoxy; C_6 , C_{10} aryl or Het; lower thioalkyl; halo; amino optionally mono-substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl; or C_6 , C_{10} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl or Het, optionally substituted with R_{22} wherein R_{22} is C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{1-6} alkoxy, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, or Het;

P1 is a cyclopropyl ring wherein carbon 1 has the R configuration,

$$= \text{either of} \qquad \qquad \begin{array}{c} R_1 \\ R_1 \\ R_2 \\ R_3 \\ R_4 \\ R_4 \\ R_5 \\ R_5 \\ R_1 \\ R_2 \\ R_3 \\ R_4 \\ R_5 \\ R_5 \\ R_5 \\ R_5 \\ R_5 \\ R_7 \\ R_7$$

and R1 is ethyl, vinyl, cyclopropyl, 1 or 2-bromoethyl or 1 or 2-bromovinyl.

Further included in the scope of the invention are compounds of formula I wherein:

10 **B** is *tert*-butoxycarbonyl (Boc) or

R³ is the side chain of Tbg, Chg or Val;

R₂ is:

15

5

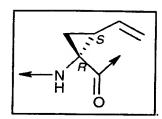
$$R_{22A}$$
 R_{21B}
 R_{21B}
 R_{21B}

wherein R_{22A} is C₁₋₆ alkyl (such as methyl); C₁₋₆ alkoxy (such as methoxy); or halo (such as chloro); R_{22B} is C₁₋₆ alkyl, amino optionally mono-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, amido, or (lower alkyl)amide; and R_{21B} is C₁₋₆ alkyl, C₁₋₆ alkoxy, amino, di(lower alkyl)amino, (lower alkyl)amide, NO₂, OH, halo, trifluoromethyl, or carboxyl;

and P1 is:

15

20



Finally, included within the scope of this invention is each compound of formula I as presented in Tables 1 to 10.

According to an alternate embodiment, the pharmaceutical compositions of this invention may additionally comprise another anti-HCV agent. Examples of anti-HCV agents include, α- or β-interferon, ribavirin and amantadine.

According to another alternate embodiment, the pharmaceutical compositions of this invention may additionally comprise other inhibitors of HCV protease.

According to yet another alternate embodiment, the pharmaceutical compositions of this invention may additionally comprise an inhibitor of other targets in the HCV life cycle, including but not limited to, helicase, polymerase, metalloprotease or internal ribosome entry site (IRES).

The pharmaceutical compositions of this invention may be administered orally, parenterally or via an implanted reservoir. Oral administration or administration by injection is preferred. The pharmaceutical compositions of this invention may contain any conventional non-toxic pharmaceutically-acceptable carriers, adjuvants or vehicles. In some cases, the pH of the formulation may be adjusted with pharmaceutically acceptable acids, bases or buffers to enhance the stability of the formulated compound or its delivery form. The term parenteral as used herein includes subcutaneous, intracutaneous, intravenous, intramuscular, intra-articular, intrasynovial, intrasternal, intrathecal, and intralesional injection or infusion techniques.

The pharmaceutical compositions may be in the form of a sterile injectable
preparation, for example, as a sterile injectable aqueous or oleaginous suspension.
This suspension may be formulated according to techniques known in the art using suitable dispersing or wetting agents (such as, for example Tween 80) and suspending agents.

WO 00/09543 PCT/CA99/00736

30

The pharmaceutical compositions of this invention may be orally administered in any orally acceptable dosage form including, but not limited to, capsules, tablets, and aqueous suspensions and solutions. In the case of tablets for oral use, carriers which are commonly used include lactose and corn starch. Lubricating agents, such as magnesium stearate, are also typically added. For oral administration in a capsule form, useful diluents include lactose and dried corn starch. When aqueous suspensions are administered orally, the active ingredient is combined with emulsifying and suspending agents. If desired, certain sweetening and/or flavoring and/or coloring agents may be added.

5

15

20

Other suitable vehicles or carriers for the above noted formulations and compositions can be found in standard pharmaceutical texts, e.g. in "Remington's Pharmaceutical Sciences", The Science and Practice of Pharmacy, 19th Ed. Mack Publishing Company, Easton, Penn., (1995).

Dosage levels of between about 0.01 and about 100 mg/kg body weight per day, preferably between about 0.5 and about 75 mg/kg body weight per day of the protease inhibitor compounds described herein are useful in a monotherapy for the prevention and treatment of HCV mediated disease. Typically, the pharmaceutical compositions of this invention will be administered from about 1 to about 5 times per day or alternatively, as a continuous infusion. Such administration can be used as a chronic or acute therapy. The amount of active ingredient that may be combined with the carrier materials to produce a single dosage form will vary depending upon the host treated and the particular mode of administration. A typical preparation will contain from about 5% to about 95% active compound (w/w). Preferably, such preparations contain from about 20% to about 80% active compound.

As the skilled artisan will appreciate, lower or higher doses than those recited above may be required. Specific dosage and treatment regimens for any particular patient will depend upon a variety of factors, including the activity of the specific compound employed, the age, body weight, general health status, sex, diet, time of administration, rate of excretion, drug combination, the severity and course of the infection, the patient's disposition to the infection and the judgment of the treating physician. Generally, treatment is initiated with small dosages substantially less than the optimum dose of the peptide. Thereafter, the dosage is increased by small increments until the optimum effect under the circumstances is reached. In general, the compound is most desirably administered at a concentration level that will

WO 00/09543 PCT/CA99/00736

31

generally afford antivirally effective results without causing any harmful or deleterious side effects.

When the compositions of this invention comprise a combination of a compound of formula I and one or more additional therapeutic or prophylactic agent, both the compound and the additional agent should be present at dosage levels of between about 10 to 100%, and more preferably between about 10 and 80% of the dosage normally administered in a monotherapy regimen.

When these compounds or their pharmaceutically acceptable salts are formulated together with a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier, the resulting composition may be administered *in vivo* to mammals, such as man, to inhibit HCV NS3 protease or to treat or prevent HCV virus infection. Such treatment may also be achieved using the compounds of this invention in combination with agents which include, but are not limited to: immunomodulatory agents, such as α -, β -, or γ -interferons; other antiviral agents such as ribavirin, amantadine; other inhibitors of HCV NS3 protease; inhibitors of other targets in the HCV life cycle, which include but not limited to, helicase, polymerase, metalloprotease, or internal ribosome entry site (IRES); or combinations thereof. The additional agents may be combined with the compounds of this invention to create a single dosage form. Alternatively these additional agents may be separately administered to a mammal as part of a multiple dosage form.

10

15

25

30

Accordingly, another embodiment of this invention provides methods of inhibiting HCV NS3 protease activity in mammals by administering a compound of the formula I, wherein the substituents are as defined above.

In a preferred embodiment, these methods are useful in decreasing HCV NS3 protease activity in a mammal. If the pharmaceutical composition comprises only a compound of this invention as the active component, such methods may additionally comprise the step of administering to said mammal an agent selected from an immunomodulatory agent, an antiviral agent, a HCV protease inhibitor, or an inhibitor of other targets in the HCV life cycle such as helicase, polymerase, or metallo protease or IRES. Such additional agent may be administered to the mammal prior to, concurrently with, or following the administration of the compositions of this invention.

In an alternate preferred embodiment, these methods are useful for inhibiting viral replication in a mammal. Such methods are useful in treating or preventing HCV

10

15

20

disease. If the pharmaceutical composition comprises only a compound of this invention as the active component, such methods may additionally comprise the step of administering to said mammal an agent selected from an immunomodulatory agent, an antiviral agent, a HCV protease inhibitor, or an inhibitor of other targets in the HCV life cycle. Such additional agent may be administered to the mammal prior to, concurrently with, or following the administration of the composition according to this invention.

The compounds set forth herein may also be used as laboratory reagents. The compounds of this invention may also be used to treat or prevent viral contamination of materials and therefore reduce the risk of viral infection of laboratory or medical personnel or patients who come in contact with such materials (e.g. blood, tissue, surgical instruments and garments, laboratory instruments and garments, and blood collection apparatuses and materials).

The compounds set forth herein may also be used as research reagents. The compounds of this invention may also be used as positive control to validate surrogate cell-based assays or *in vitro* or *in vivo* viral replication assays.

PROCESS

The compounds of the present invention were synthesized according to a general process as illustrated in scheme I (wherein CPG is a carboxyl protecting group and APG is an amino protecting group):

P1 — P1-CPG + APG-P2 — APG-P2-P1-CPG P2-P1-CPG + APG-P3 — C APG-P3-P2-P1-CPG D APG-P3-P2-P1-CPG

Briefly, the P1, P2, and P3 can be linked by well known peptide coupling techniques. The P1, P2, and P3 groups may be linked together in any order as long as the final

15

20

25

30

compound corresponds to peptides of Formula I. For example, P3 can be linked to P2-P1; or P1 linked to P3-P2.

Generally, peptides are elongated by deprotecting the α -amino group of the N-terminal residue and coupling the unprotected carboxyl group of the next suitably N-protected amino acid through a peptide linkage using the methods described. This deprotection and coupling procedure is repeated until the desired sequence is obtained. This coupling can be performed with the constituent amino acids in stepwise fashion, as depicted in Scheme I, or by solid phase peptide synthesis according to the method originally described in Merrifield, J. Am. Chem. Soc., (1963), 85, 2149-2154, the disclosure of which is hereby incorporated by reference.

Coupling between two amino acids, an amino acid and a peptide, or two peptide fragments can be carried out using standard coupling procedures such as the azide method, mixed carbonic-carboxylic acid anhydride (isobutyl chloroformate) method, carbodiimide (dicyclohexylcarbodiimide, diisopropylcarbodiimide, or water-soluble carbodiimide) method, active ester (p-nitrophenyl ester, N-hydroxysuccinic imido ester) method, Woodward reagent K-method, carbonyldiimidazole method, phosphorus reagents or oxidation-reduction methods. Some of these methods (especially the carbodiimide method) can be enhanced by adding 1-hydroxybenzotriazole. These coupling reactions can be performed in either solution (liquid phase) or solid phase.

More explicitly, the coupling step involves the dehydrative coupling of a free carboxyl

of one reactant with the free amino group of the other reactant in the presence of a coupling agent to form a linking amide bond. Descriptions of such coupling agents are found in general textbooks on peptide chemistry, for example, M. Bodanszky, "Peptide Chemistry", 2nd rev ed., Springer-Verlag, Berlin, Germany, (1993). Examples of suitable coupling agents are *N*,*N'*-dicyclohexylcarbodiimide, 1-hydroxybenzotriazole in the presence of *N*,*N'*-dicyclohexylcarbodiimide or *N*-ethyl-*N'*-[(3-dimethylamino)propyl]carbodiimide. A practical and useful coupling agent is the commercially available (benzotriazol-1-yloxy)tris-(dimethylamino)phosphonium hexafluorophosphate, either by itself or in the presence of 1-hydroxybenzotriazole. Another practical and useful coupling agent is commercially available 2-(1H-benzotriazol-1-yl)-*N*, *N*, *N'*, *N'*-tetramethyluronium tetrafluoroborate. Still another

practical and useful coupling agent is commercially available O-(7-azabenzotriazol-

1-yl)-N,N,N',N'-tetramethyluronium hexafluorophosphate.

10

15

20

25

The coupling reaction is conducted in an inert solvent, e.g. dichloromethane, acetonitrile or dimethylformamide. An excess of a tertiary amine, e.g. diisopropylethylamine, *N*-methylmorpholine or *N*-methylpyrrolidine, is added to maintain the reaction mixture at a pH of about 8. The reaction temperature usually ranges between 0°C and 50°C and the reaction time usually ranges between 15 min and 24 h.

When a solid phase synthetic approach is employed, the C-terminal carboxylic acid is attached to an insoluble carrier (usually polystyrene). These insoluble carriers contain a group that will react with the carboxylic group to form a bond that is stable to the elongation conditions but readily cleaved later. Examples of which are: chloro-or bromomethyl resin, hydroxymethyl resin, trytil resin and 2-methoxy-4-alkoxy-benzylaloconol resin.

Many of these resins are commercially available with the desired C-terminal amino acid already incorporated. Alternatively, the amino acid can be incorporated on the solid support by known methods (Wang, S.-S., *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, (1973), <u>95</u>, 1328; Atherton, E.; Shepard, R.C. "Solid-phase peptide synthesis; a practical approach" IRL Press: Oxford, (1989); 131-148). In addition to the foregoing, other methods of peptide synthesis are described in Stewart and Young, "Solid Phase Peptide Synthesis", 2nd ed., Pierce Chemical Co., Rockford, IL (1984); Gross, Meienhofer, Udenfriend, Eds., "The Peptides: Analysis, Synthesis, Biology", Vol. 1, 2, 3, 5, and 9, Academic Press, New-York, (1980-1987); Bodansky et al., "The Practice of Peptide Synthesis" Springer-Verlag, New-York (1984), the disclosures of which are hereby incorporated by reference.

The functional groups of the constituent amino acids generally must be protected during the coupling reactions to avoid formation of undesired bonds. The protecting groups that can be used are listed in Greene, "Protective Groups in Organic Chemistry", John Wiley & Sons, New York (1981) and "The Peptides: Analysis, Synthesis, Biology", Vol. 3, Academic Press, New York (1981), the disclosures of which are hereby incorporated by reference.

The α-carboxyl group of the C-terminal residue is usually protected as an ester (CPG) that can be cleaved to give the carboxylic acid. Protecting groups that can be used include: 1) alkyl esters such as methyl, trimethylsilylethyl and t-butyl, 2) aralkyl esters such as benzyl and substituted benzyl, or 3) esters that can be cleaved by

25

30

mild base treatment or mild reductive means such as trichloroethyl and phenacyl esters.

The α -amino group of each amino acid to be coupled to the growing peptide chain must be protected (APG). Any protecting group known in the art can be used.

Examples of such groups include: 1) acyl groups such as formyl, trifluoroacetyl, phthalyl, and *p*-toluenesulfonyl; 2) aromatic carbamate groups such as benzyloxycarbonyl (Cbz or Z) and substituted benzyloxycarbonyls, and 9-fluorenylmethyloxycarbonyl (Fmoc); 3) aliphatic carbamate groups such as *tert*-butyloxycarbonyl (Boc), ethoxycarbonyl, diisopropylmethoxycarbonyl, and
 allyloxycarbonyl; 4) cyclic alkyl carbamate groups such as cyclopentyloxycarbonyl and adamantyloxycarbonyl; 5) alkyl groups such as triphenylmethyl and benzyl; 6) trialkylsilyl such as trimethylsilyl; and 7) thiol containing groups such as phenylthiocarbonyl and dithiasuccinoyl. The preferred α-amino protecting group is either Boc or Fmoc. Many amino acid derivatives suitably protected for peptide synthesis are commercially available.

The α -amino protecting group of the newly added amino acid residue is cleaved prior to the coupling of the next amino acid. When the Boc group is used, the methods of choice are trifluoroacetic acid, neat or in dichloromethane, or HCl in dioxane or in ethyl acetate. The resulting ammonium salt is then neutralized either prior to the coupling or *in situ* with basic solutions such as aqueous buffers, or tertiary amines in dichloromethane or acetonitrile or dimethylformamide. When the Fmoc group is used, the reagents of choice are piperidine or substituted piperidine in dimethylformamide, but any secondary amine can be used. The deprotection is carried out at a temperature between 0°C and room temperature (RT) usually 20 - 22°C.

Any of the amino acids having side chain functionalities must be protected during the preparation of the peptide using any of the above-described groups. Those skilled in the art will appreciate that the selection and use of appropriate protecting groups for these side chain functionalities depend upon the amino acid and presence of other protecting groups in the peptide. The selection of such protecting groups is important in that the group must not be removed during the deprotection and coupling of the α -amino group.

For example, when Boc is used as the $\alpha\text{-amino}$ protecting group, the following side

10

15

20

25

30

chain protecting group are suitable: *p*-toluenesulfonyl (tosyl) moieties can be used to protect the amino side chain of amino acids such as Lys and Arg; acetamidomethyl, benzyl (Bn), or *t*-butylsulfonyl moieties can be used to protect the sulfide containing side chain of cysteine; benzyl (Bn) ethers can be used to protect the hydroxy containing side chains of serine, threonine or hydroxyproline; and benzyl esters can be used to protect the carboxy containing side chains of aspartic acid and glutamic acid.

When Fmoc is chosen for the α -amine protection, usually *tert*-butyl based protecting groups are acceptable. For instance, Boc can be used for lysine and arginine, *tert*-butyl ether for serine, threonine and hydroxyproline, and *tert*-butyl ester for aspartic acid and glutamic acid. Triphenylmethyl (Trityl) moiety can be used to protect the sulfide containing side chain of cysteine.

Once the elongation of the peptide is completed all of the protecting groups are removed. When a liquid phase synthesis is used, the protecting groups are removed in whatever manner is dictated by the choice of protecting groups. These procedures are well known to those skilled in the art.

When a solid phase synthesis is used, the peptide is cleaved from the resin simultaneously with the removal of the protecting groups. When the Boc protection method is used in the synthesis, treatment with anhydrous HF containing additives such as dimethyl sulfide, anisole, thioanisole, or *p*-cresol at 0°C is the preferred method for cleaving the peptide from the resin. The cleavage of the peptide can also be accomplished by other acid reagents such as trifluoromethanesulfonic acid/trifluoroacetic acid mixtures. If the Fmoc protection method is used, the N-terminal Fmoc group is cleaved with reagents described earlier. The other protecting groups and the peptide are cleaved from the resin using solution of trifluoroacetic acid and various additives such as anisole, etc.

1. Synthesis of capping group B

Different capping groups **B** are introduced in the following manner:

- 1.1) When B is an aryl, aralkyl: the arylated amino acids were prepared by one of the three methods below:
 - a) Direct nucleophilic displacement on a fluoro-nitro aryl moiety:

10

15

37

Briefly, 4-fluoro-3-nitrobenzotrifluoride (a) was reacted with L-amino acid (b) in the presence of a base such as potassium carbonate at 80°C to yield the desired N-aryl amino acid (c);

b) Copper catalyzed couplings according to Ma *et al.* (*J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **1998**, 120, 12459-12467):

Briefly, bromo-4-fluorobenzene (d) was reacted with L-amino acid (b) in the presence of a base such as potassium carbonate and a catalytic amount of copper iodide at 90°C to yield the desired N-aryl amino acid (e); or

c) Nucleophilic displacement of a triflate by an aniline:

Briefly, o-anisidine (f) was reacted with triflate (g) in the presence of a base such as 2,6-lutidine at 90°C to give benzyl ester (h). Hydrogenation with 10% Pd/C yielded the desired N-aryl amino acid (i).

1.2) When B is an aminothiazole derivative:

- a) The Fmoc-thiocyanate prepared according to Kearney et al., **1998**, J. Org. Chem, *63*, 196, was reacted with a protected P3 residue or the whole peptide or a peptide segment to provide the thiourea.
- b) The thiourea derivative is reacted with an appropriate bromoketone to provide the corresponding thiazole derivative.

1.3) When B is R₄-C(O)-, R₄-S(O)₂:

Protected P3 or the whole peptide or a peptide segment is coupled to an appropriate acyl chloride or sulfonyl chloride respectively, that is either commercially available or for which the synthesis is well known in the art.

1.4) When B is R₄O-C(O)-:

10

15

20

Protected P3 or the whole peptide or a peptide segment is coupled to an appropriate chloroformate that is either commercially available or for which the synthesis is well known in the art. For Boc- derivatives (Boc)₂O is used.

For example:

- a) Cyclobutanol is treated with phosgene to furnish the corresponding chloroformate.
- b) The chloroformate is treated with the desired NH₂-tripeptide in the presence of a base such as triethylamine to afford the cyclobutylcarbamate.

15

1.5) When **B** is **R**₄-N(**R**₅)-C(O)-, or **R**₄-NH-C(S)-, protected P3 or the whole peptide or a peptide segment is treated with phosgene followed by amine as described in SynLett. Feb 1995; (2); 142-144

2. Synthesis of P2 moieties.

5 2.1 Synthesis of precursors:

A) Synthesis of haloarylmethane derivatives.

The preparation of halomethyl-8-quinoline **IId** was done according to the procedure of K.N. Campbell et al., J. Amer. Chem. Soc., (1946), <u>68</u>, 1844.

SCHEME II

Briefly, 8-quinoline carboxylic acid **IIa** was converted to the corresponding alcohol **IIc** by reduction of the corresponding acyl halide **IIb** with a reducing agent such as lithium aluminium hydride. Treatment of alcohol **IIb** with the appropriate hydrohaloacid gives the desired halo derivative **IId**. A specific embodiments of this process is presented in Example 1.

B) Synthesis of aryl alcohol derivatives:

2-phenyl-4-hydroxyquinoline derivatives **Ilic** were prepared according to Giardina et al. (J. Med. Chem., (1997), <u>40</u>, 1794-1807).

20 SCHEME III

 R_{22} & R_{21B} = alkyl, OH, SH, halo, NH₂, NO₂.

10

Briefly, benzoylacetamide (IIIa) was condensed with the appropriate aniline (IIIb) and the imine obtained was cyclized with polyphosphoric acid to give the corresponding 2-phenyl-4-hydroxyquinoline (IIIc). A specific embodiment of this process is presented in Example 2.

Or alternatively, the process can be carried out in a different manner:

Benzoylethyl ester (IIIa) was condensed with the appropriate aniline (IIIb) in the presence of acid and the imine obtained was cyclized by heating at 260-280°C to give the corresponding 2-phenyl-4-hydroxyquinoline (IIIc). A specific embodiments of this process is presented in Example 3 (compound 3e).

2.2. Synthesis of P2:

A) The synthesis of 4-substituted proline (wherein \mathbb{R}^2 is attached to the ring via a carbon atom) (with the stereochemistry as shown):

is done as shown in Scheme IV according to the procedures described by J. Ezquerra et al. (Tetrahedron, (1993), <u>38</u>, 8665-8678) and C. Pedregal et al. (Tetrahedron Lett., (1994), <u>35</u>, 2053-2056).

SCHEME IV

Briefly, Boc-pyroglutamic acid is protected as a benzyl ester. Treatment with

a strong base such as lithium diisopropylamide followed by addition of an alkylating agent (Br-R²⁰ or I-R²⁰) gives the desired compounds **IVe** after reduction of the amide and deprotection of the ester.

B) The synthesis of O-substituted-4-(R)-hydroxyproline:

5

may be carried out using the different processes described below.

1) When R²⁰ is aryl, aralkyl, Het or (lower alkyl)-Het, the process can be carried out according to the procedure described by E.M. Smith et al. (J. Med. Chem. (1988), <u>31</u>, 875-885). Briefly, commercially available Boc-4(R)-hydroxyproline is treated with a base such as sodium hydride or potassium *tert*-butoxide and the resulting alkoxide reacted with halo-R²⁰ (Br-R²⁰, I-R²⁰, etc..) to give the desired compounds. Specific embodiments of this process are presented in Examples 4, 5 and 7.

15

20

10

2) Alternatively, when R^{20} is aryl or Het, the compounds can also be prepared via a Mitsunobu reaction (Mitsunobu (1981), Synthesis, <u>January</u>, 1-28; Rano *et al.*, (1995), Tet. Lett. <u>36(22)</u>, 3779-3792; Krchnak *et al.*, (1995), Tet. Lett. <u>36(5)</u>, 62193-6196; Richter *et al.*, (1994), Tet. Lett. <u>35(27)</u>, 4705-4706). Briefly, commercially available Boc-4(*S*)-hydroxyproline methyl ester is treated with the appropriate aryl alcohol or thiol in the presence of triphenylphosphine and diethylazodicarboxylate (DEAD) and the resulting ester is hydrolyzed to the acid. Specific embodiments of this process are presented in Examples 6 and 8.

SCHEME V

Alternatively, the Mitsunobu reaction can be carried out in solid phase (Scheme V). The 96-well block of the Model 396 synthesizer (advanced ChemTech) is provided with aliquots of resin-bound compound (Va) and a variety of aryl alcohols or thiols and appropriate reagents are added. After incubation, each resin-bound product (Vb) is washed, dried, and cleaved from the resin.

A Suzuki reaction (Miyaura *et al.*, (1981), Synth. Comm. <u>11</u>, 513; Sato *et al.*, (1989), Chem. Lett., 1405; Watanabe *et al.*, (1992), Synlett., 207; Takayuki *et al.*, (1993), J. Org. Chem. <u>58</u>, 2201; Frenette *et al.*, (1994), Tet. Lett. <u>35(49)</u>, 9177-9180; Guiles *et al.*, (1996), J. Org. Chem. <u>61</u>, 5169-5171) can also be used to further functionalize the aryl substituent.

3. Synthesis of P1 moieties.

10

15

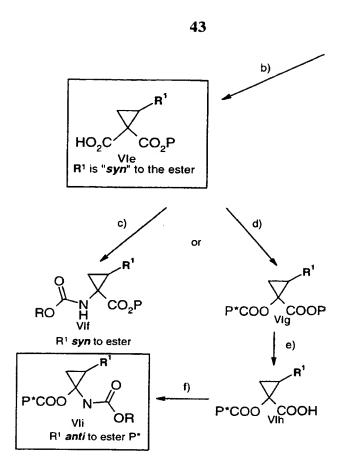
3.1 Synthesis of the 4 possible isomers of 2-substituted 1-aminocyclopropyl carboxylic acid

The synthesis was done according to scheme VI.

SCHEME VI

$$PO_{2}C CO_{2}P VIb a) PO_{2}C CO_{2}P VId VId VId$$

10



- a) Briefly, di-protected malonate **Via** and 1,2-dihaloalkane **Vib** or cyclic sulfate **Vic** (synthesized according to K. Burgess and Chun-Yen KE (Synthesis, (1996), 1463-1467) are reacted under basic conditions to give the diester **Vid**.
- b) A regioselective hydrolysis of the less hindered ester is performed to give the acid **VIe**.
- c) This acid **VIe** is subjected to a Curtius rearrangement to give a racemic mixture of 1-aminocyclopropylcarboxylic acid derivatives **VIf** with R¹ being *syn* to the carboxyl group. A specific embodiment for this synthesis is presented in Example 9.
- d, e) Alternatively, selective ester formation from the acid **VIe** with an appropriate halide (P*CI) or alcohol (P*OH) forms diester **VIg** in which the P* ester is compatible with the selective hydrolysis of the P ester. Hydrolysis of P ester provides acid **VIh**.
- f) A Curtius rearrangement on VIh gives a racemic mixture of 1aminocyclopropylcarboxylic acid derivatives VIi with R¹ group being anti to the carboxyl group. A specific embodiment for this synthesis is presented in Example 14.

44

An alternative synthesis for the preparation of derivatives **VIIf** (when R¹ is vinyl and syn to the carboxyl group) is described below.

SCHEME VII

Treatment of commercially available or easily obtainable imines **VIIa** with 1,4-dihalobutene **VIIb** in presence of a base produces, after hydrolysis of the resulting imine **VIIc**, **VIId** having the allyl substituent *syn* to the carboxyl group. Specific embodiments of this process are presented in Example 15 and 19.

Resolution of all of the above enantiomeric mixtures at carbon 1 (Vie and Viid) can be carried out via:

- 1) enzymatic separation (Examples 13, 17 and 20);
- 2) crystallization with a chiral acid (Example 18); or
- 3) chemical derivatization (Example 10).

Following resolution, determination of the absolute stereochemistry can be carried out as presented in Example 11.

Enantiomeric resolution and stereochemistry determination can be carried out in the same manner for the enantiomeric mixtures at carbon 1 wherein the substituent at C2 is *anti* to the carboxyl group (VIi).

3.2 Synthesis of 1-aminocyclobutyl carboxylic acid

The synthesis of 1,1-aminocyclobutanecarboxylic acid is carried out according to "Kavin Douglas; Ramaligam Kondareddiar; Woodard Ronald, Synth. Commun. (1985), 15 (4), 267-72.

SCHEME VIII

Briefly, treatment of compound **Villa** with a base in the presence of **VIIIb** gives the corresponding cyclobutyl derivative **VIIIc**. Hydrolysis of the isocyanate and ester groups of **VIIIc** under acidic conditions (HCI) yields the hydrochloride salt of the 1-amino-cyclobutylcarboxylic acid **VIIId**. The carboxylic acid is later esterified under methanol in HCI. A specific embodiment of this esterification is described in Example 21.

3.3 Synthesis of 2-substituted 1-aminocyclobutyl carboxylic acid

10

15

20

5

SCHEME IX

- a) A protected glycine ester derivative such as imine **IXa** is alkylated with an homoallylic electrophile **IXb** using an appropriate base such as a metal hydride, hydroxide or alkoxide. Useful leaving groups in **IXb** include halogens (X = CI, Br, I) or sulfonate esters (mesylate, tosylate or triflate). The allylic alcohol functionality in **IXb** is protected with hydroxyl protecting groups well known in the art (e.g. acetate, silyl, acetals).
- b) In a second step, the hydroxyl function of monoalkylated derivative **IXc** is deprotected and converted to a suitable electrophilic function X such as described above for compound **IXb**.
- c) Cyclization of IXd to cyclobutane derivative IXe is carried out by treatment with a

10

15

20

base (metal hydrides, alkoxides), followed by hydrolysis using aqueous mineral acids and neutralization with a mild base. At this stage, *syn* and *anti*-isomers of **IXe** can be separated by flash chromatography.

d) Optionally, the double bond in **IXe** can also be hydrogenated under standard conditions to yield the corresponding saturated derivative **IXf**.

The invention further comprises a process for the preparation of a peptide analog of formula (I) wherein P1 is a substituted aminocyclopropyl carboxylic acid residue, comprising the step of:

- coupling a peptide selected from the group consisting of: APG-P3-P2; or APG-P2;
- with a P1 intermediate of formula:

wherein R_1 is C_{1-6} alkyl, cycloalkyl or C_{2-6} alkenyl, all optionally substituted with halogen, CPG is a carboxyl protecting group and APG is an amino protecting group and P3 and P2 are as defined above.

The invention further comprises a process for the preparation of: 1)a serine protease inhibitor peptide analog, or 2) a HCV NS3 protease inhibitor peptide analog, this process comprising the step of:

coupling a (suitably protected) amino acid, peptide or peptide fragment with a P1 intermediate of formula:

wherein $\mathbf{R_1}$ is C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{3-7} cycloalkyl or C_{2-6} alkenyl, all optionally substituted with halogen, and CPG is a carboxyl protecting group.

The invention therefore comprises a process for the preparation of: 1) a protease

inhibitor peptide analog, or 2) a serine protease inhibitor peptide analog, this process comprising the step of:

 coupling a (suitably protected) amino acid, peptide or peptide fragment with an intermediate of formula:

5

10

15

wherein CPG is a carboxyl protecting group.

The invention also comprises the use of a P1 intermediate of formula:

wherein R_1 is C_{1-6} alkyl, cycloalkyl or C_{2-6} alkenyl, all optionally substituted with halogen, for the preparation of: 1)a serine protease inhibitor peptide analog, or 2) a HCV NS3 protease inhibitor peptide analog.

The invention also comprises the use of an intermediate of formula:

wherein CPG is a carboxyl protecting group, for the preparation of: 1) a protease inhibitor peptide analog, or 2) a serine protease inhibitor peptide analog.

The invention also comprises the use of a P1 intermediate of formula:

$$\begin{array}{c|c}
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\
 & & \\$$

wherein R₁ is C₁₋₆ alkyl, cycloalkyl or C₂₋₆ alkenyl, all optionally substituted with

halogen, for the preparation of a compound of formula I as defined above.

Finally, the invention also comprises the use of a proline analog of formula:

wherein R_{21A} is C₁₋₆ alkyl; C₁₋₆ alkoxy; lower thioalkyl; halo; amino optionally monosubstituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl; C₆, C₁₀ aryl, C₇₋₁₆ aralkyl or Het, said aryl, aralkyl or Het optionally substituted with R₂₂ wherein R₂₂ is C₁₋₆ alkyl, C₁₋₆ alkoxy, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, or Het, and R_{21B} is C₁₋₆ alkyl, C₁₋₆ alkoxy, amino, di(lower alkyl)amino, (lower alkyl)amide, NO₂, OH, halo, trifluoromethyl, or carboxyl;

for the synthesis of 1) a serine protease inhibitor peptide analog, 2) a HCV NS3 protease inhibitor peptide analog, or 3) a peptide analog of formula I as defined above.

EXAMPLES

- The present invention is illustrated in further detail by the following non-limiting examples.
- Temperatures are given in degrees Celsius. Solution percentages express a weight to volume relationship, and solution ratios express a volume to volume relationship, unless stated otherwise. Nuclear magnetic resonance (NMR) spectra were recorded on a Bruker 400 MHz spectrometer; the chemical shifts (δ) are reported in parts per million. Flash chromatography was carried out on silica gel (SiO₂) according to Still's flash chromatography technique (W.C. Still et al., J. Org. Chem., (1978), 43, 2923).

Abbreviations used in the examples include Bn: benzyl; Boc: *tert*-butyloxycarbonyl {Me₃COC(O)}; BSA: bovine serum albumin; CHAPS: 3-[(3-cholamidopropyl)-

25 dimethylammonio]-1-propanesulfonate; DBU: 1,8-diazabicyclo[5.4.0]undec-7-ene;

CH₂Cl₂= DCM: methylene chloride; DEAD: diethylazodicarboxylate; DIAD: diisopropylazodicarboxylate; DIEA: diisopropylethylamine; DIPEA: diisopropylethylamine; DMAP: dimethylaminopyridine; DCC: 1,3dicyclohexylcarbodiimide; DME: 1,2-dimethyoxyethane; DMF: dimethylformamide; DMSO: dimethylsulfoxide; DTT: dithiothreitol or threo-1,4-dimercapto-2,3-butanediol; 5 DPPA: diphenylphosphoryl azide; EDTA: ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid; Et: ethyl; EtOH: ethanol; EtOAc: ethyl acetate; Et2O: diethyl ether; HATU: [O-7azabenzotriazol-1-yl)-1,1,3,3-tetramethyluronium hexafluorophosphate]; HPLC: high performance liquid chromatography; MS: mass spectrometry (MALDI-TOF: Matrix Assisted Laser Disorption Ionization-Time of Flight, FAB: Fast Atom Bombardment); 10 LAH: lithium aluminum hydride; Me: methyl; MeOH: methanol; MES: (2-{Nmorpholino}ethane-sulfonic acid); NaHMDS: sodium bis(trimethylsilyl)amide; NMM: N-methylmorpholine; NMP: N-methylpyrrolidine; Pr: propyl; Succ: 3carboxypropanoyl; PNA: 4-nitrophenylamino or p-nitroanilide; TBAF: tetra-nbutylammonium fluoride; TBTU: 2-(1H-benzotriazole-1-yl)-1,1,3,3-15 tetramethyluronium tetrafluoroborate; TCEP: tris(2-carboxyethyl) phosphine hydrochloride; TFA: trifluoroacetic acid; THF: tetrahydrofuran; TIS: triisopropylsilane; TLC: thin layer chromatography; TMSE: trimethylsilylethyl; Tris/HCI: tris(hydroxymethyl)aminomethane hydrochloride.

20

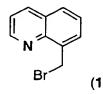
25

30

P2 BUILDING BLOCKS

EXAMPLE 1

Synthesis of bromomethyl-8-quinoline (1):



To commercially available 8-quinoline carboxylic acid (2.5 g, 14.4 mmol) was added neat thionyl chloride (10 ml, 144 mmol). This mixture was heated at 80°C for 1 h before the excess thionyl chloride was distilled off under reduced pressure. To the resulting brownish solid was added absolute EtOH (15 mL) which was heated at 80°C for 1 h before being concentrated *in vacuo*. The residue was partitioned between EtOAc and saturated aqueous NaHCO₃, and the organic phase dried (MgSO₄), filtered and concentrated to give a brownish oil (2.8 g). This material (ca.

10

25

14.4 mmol) was added dropwise over 35 min to a LAH (0.76 g, 20.2 mmol)/Et₂O suspension which was cooled to –60°C. The reaction mixture was slowly warmed to –35°C over 1.5 h before the reaction was complete. The reaction was quenched with MgSO₄.10H₂O slowly over 30 min and then wet THF. The mixture was partitioned between Et₂O and 10% aqueous NaHCO₃. The organic phase was dried (MgSO₄), filtered and concentrated to give a yellowish solid (2.31 g, 80% over 2 steps) corresponding to the alcohol. The alcohol (2.3 g, 11.44 mmol) was dissolved in AcOH/HBr (20 mL, 30% solution from Aldrich) and heated at 70°C for 2.5 h. The mixture was concentrated *in vacuo* to dryness, partitioned between EtOAc (100 mL) and saturated aqueous NaHCO₃ before being dried (MgSO₄), filtered and concentrated to give the desired compound (1) as a brownish solid (2.54 g, 100%).

EXAMPLE 2

Synthesis of 2-phenyl-4-hydroxyquinoline (2):

Commercially available ethyl benzoylacetate (6.00 g, 31.2 mmol) was heated at 85°C (sealed tube) in 75 mL of 30% NH₄OH for 2 hours. The solid formed upon cooling was filtered and refluxed in water for 2 hours. The solution was extracted three times with CH₂Cl₂. The organic layers were combined, dried over MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated. The yellow residue was flash chromatographed on silica gel, eluting with EtOAc:hexane (3:7), to give the corresponding amide as a white solid, 1.60 g, 31% yield.

This amide (250 mg, 1.53 mmol) was refluxed using a Dean-Stark apparatus with aniline (143 mg, 1.53 mmol) and aniline•HCl (10 mg, 0.08 mmol) in toluene (10 mL) for 16 h. The solution was concentrated to afford a brown oil that was mixed with polyphosphoric acid (2 g) and heated at 135°C for 20 min. The reaction mixture was poured into water and adjusted to pH 8 with 5 M NaOH. The aqueous suspension was extracted twice with ethyl acetate. The organic layers were combined, washed with brine, dried over MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated. The residue was flash chromatographed on silica gel, eluting with 3% MeOH in ethyl acetate, to give 2-

phenyl-4-hydroxyquinoline (2), 67 mg, 20% yield.

 1 H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ 8.11 (d, J = 7 Hz, 1 H), 7.86-7.83 (m, 2 H), 7.77 (d, J = 8 Hz, 1 H), 7.68 (dd, J = 8, 7 Hz, 1 H), 7.61-7.58 (m, 3 H), 7.35 (dd, J = 8, 7 Hz, 1 H), 6.34 (s, 1 H).

5 EXAMPLE 3

10

15

20

Synthesis of 4-hydroxy-2-phenyl -7-methoxyquinoline (3)

4-hydroxy-2-phenyl -7-methoxyquinoline (e):

A solution of ethyl benzoylacetate (b) (100.0 g, 0.52 mol), m-anisidine (a) (128.1 g, 1.04 mol) and 4 N HCl / dioxane (5.2 mL) in toluene (1.0 L) was refluxed for 6.25 h in a Dean-Stark apparatus. The cooled toluene solution was successively washed with aqueous 10% HCl (2 × 300 mL), 1 N NaOH (2 × 300 mL), H_2O (300 mL) and brine (150 mL). The toluene phase was dried (MgSO₄), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure to give a 1.2:1.0 mixture of ester c and amide d (144.6 g, 45% / 38% crude yield) as a dark brown oil. The crude oil was heated to 280 °C for 80 min while distilling generated EtOH. The cooled dark solid obtained was triturated with CH_2CI_2 (200 mL). The suspension was filtered and the resulting solid washed with CH_2CI_2 to give e (22.6 g, 17% from e) as a beige solid: e1 NMR (DMSO-e6) e3 8.00 (d, e4 = 9.0 Hz, 1H), 7.81-7.82 (m, 2H), 7.57-7.59 (m, 3H), 7.20 (d, e4 = 2.2 Hz, 1H), 6.94 (dd, e5 = 9.0, 2.2 Hz, 1H), 6.26 (s, 1H), 3.87 (s, 3H).

4-Chloro-2-phenyl-7-methoxyquinoline (3):

A suspension of e (8.31 g, 33.1 mmol) in POCI₃ (90 mL) was heated to reflux for 2 h

(clear solution obtained upon heating). The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was partitioned between 1 N NaOH (exothermic, 10 N NaOH added to maintain high pH) and EtOAc (500 mL). The organic layer was washed with H_2O (100 mL) and brine (100 mL) then was dried (MgSO₄), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure to give 3 (8.60 g, 96%) as a pale yellow solid: ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ 8.28-8.30 (m, 2H), 8.20 (s, 1H), 8.10 (d, J = 9.1 Hz, 1H), 7.54-7.58 (m, 3H), 7.52 (d, J = 2.5 Hz, 1H), 7.38 (dd, J = 9.1, 2.5 Hz, 1H), 3.98 (s, 3H). This reaction was repeated three times and gave always 96-98% yield which is significantly higher that the 68% yield reported in J. Med. Chem. 1997, 40, 1794.

EXAMPLE 4

5

10

15

20

25

Synthesis of Boc-4(R)-(naphthalen-1-ylmethoxy) proline (4):

Commercially available Boc-4*(R)*-hydroxyproline (5.00 g, 21.6 mmol) was dissolved in THF (100 mL) and cooled to 0°C. Sodium hydride (60% dispersion in oil, 1.85 g, 45.4 mmol) was added portionwise over 10 minutes and the suspension was stirred at RT for 1 h. Then, 1-(bromomethyl)naphthalene (8.00 g, 36.2 mmol) (prepared as described in E.A. Dixon et al. Can. J. Chem., (1981), <u>59</u>, 2629-2641) was added and the mixture was heated at reflux for 18 h. The mixture was poured into water (300 mL) and washed with hexane. The aqueous layer was acidified with 10% aqueous HCl and extracted twice with ethyl acetate. The organic layers were combined and washed with brine, dried (MgSO₄), filtered and concentrated. The residue was purified by flash chromatography (49:49:2 hexane: ethyl acetate: acetic acid) to give the title compound as a colorless oil (4.51 g, 56% yield). ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) indicated the presence of two rotamers: δ 8.05 (m, 1H), 7.94 (m, 1H), 7.29 (d, J=14 Hz, 1H), 7.55-7.45 (m, 4H), 4.96 (m, 2H), 4.26 (br. s, 1H), 4.12 (dd, J=J=8 Hz, 1H), 3.54-3.42 (m, 2H), 2.45-2.34 (m, 1H), 2.07-1.98 (m, 1H) 1.36 (s, (3/9) 9H), 1.34 (s, (6/9) 9H).

EXAMPLE 5

Synthesis of Boc-4(R)-(8-quinoline-methoxy) proline (5):

Boc-4(R)-hydroxyproline (1.96 g, 8.5 mmol) in anhydrous THF (20 mL) was added to a suspension of NaH (1.4 g, 60% in oil, 34 mmol) in THF (100 mL). This mixture was stirred 30 min before bromomethyl-8-quinoline from Example 1 (2.54 g, 11.44 mmol) was added in THF (30 mL). The reaction mixture was heated at 70°C (5 h) before the excess NaH was destroyed carefully with wet THF. The reaction was concentrated *in vacuo* and the resulting material was dissolved in EtOAc and H₂O. The basic aqueous phase was separated and acidified with 10% aqueous HCl to pH ~5 before being extracted with EtOAc (150 mL). The organic phase was dried (MgSO₄), filtered and concentrated to give a brown oil. Purification by flash chromatography (eluent: 10% MeOH/CHCl₃) gave the desired compound (5) as a pale yellow solid (2.73 g, 86%). HPLC (97.5%); 1 H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) shows rotamer populations in a 6:4 ratio, δ 12-11.4 (bs, 1H), 8.92 (2 x d, J = 4.14 and 4.14 Hz, 1H), 8.38 (2 x d, J = 8.27 and 8.27 Hz, 1H), 7.91 (d, J = 7.94 Hz, 1H), 7.77 (d, J = 7.0 Hz, 1H), 7.63-7.54 (m, 2H), 5.14 (2 x s, 2H), 4.32-4.29 (m, 1H), 4.14-4.07 (m, 1H), 3.52-3.44 (m, 2H), 2.43-2.27 (m, 1H), 2.13-2.04 (m, 1H), 1.36 and 1.34 (2 x s, 9H).

EXAMPLE 6

10

15

20 Preparation of Boc-4(R)-(7-chloroquinoline-4-oxo)proline (6):

10

15

25

Commercially available Boc-4(*S*)-hydroxyproline methyl ester (500 mg, 2.04 mmol) and 7-chloro-4-hydroxyquinoline (440 mg, 2.45 mmol) were placed in dry THF (10 mL) at 0°C. Triphenylphosphine (641 mg, 2.95 mmol) was added, followed by slow addition of DIAD (426 mg, 2.45 mmol). The mixture was stirred at RT for 20 h. The reaction mixture was then concentrated, taken up in ethyl acetate and extracted three times with HCl 1N. The aqueous phase was basified with Na₂CO₃ and extracted twice with ethyl acetate. The organic layers were combined, dried over MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated to give a yellow oil. The oil was purified by flash chromatography to give the methyl ester as a white solid, 498 mg, 58% yield.

This methyl ester (400 mg, 0.986 mmol) was hydrolyzed with 1M aqueous sodium hydroxide (1.7 mL, 1.7 mmol) in methanol (4 mL), at 0°C, for 3 h. The solution was concentrated to remove the methanol and neutralized with 1M aqueous HCl. The suspension was concentrated to dryness and taken up in methanol (20 mL), the salts were filtered off and the filtrate concentrated to give the desired compound (6) as a white solid, 387 mg, quant. yield.

 1 H NMR (DMSO-d₆) (ca. 1:1 mixture of rotamers) δ 8.74 (d, J = 5 Hz, 1 H), 8.13-8.09 (m, 1 H), 7.99 and 7.98 (s, 1 H), 7.58 (d, J = 9 Hz, 1 H), 7.02 (d, J = 5 Hz, 1 H), 5.26-5.20 (m, 1 H), 4.10-4.01 (m, 1 H), 3.81-3.72 (m, 1 H), 3.59 (dd, J = 12, 10 Hz, 1 H), 2.41-2.31 (m, 2 H), 1.34 and 1.31 (s, 9H).

20 EXAMPLE 7

Synthesis of Boc-4(R)-(2-phenyl-7-methoxyquinoline-4-oxo) proline (7):

Boc-4(R)-(2-phenyl-7-methoxyquinoline-4-oxo) proline (7):

Potassium tert-butoxide (8.16 g, 72.7 mmol) was added in small portions, over 15 min, to a solution of Boc-4(*R*)-hydroxy proline (6.73 g, 29.1 mmol) in DMSO (83 mL) maintained at 25 °C. The mixture was stirred at 25 °C for 1.5 h. Chloro-2-phenyl-7-

20

25

methoxyquinoline 3 (8.61 g, 32.0 mmol) was added in 4 portions over 15 min to the reaction mixture. The reaction mixture was stirred at 25 °C for 19 h. The resulting suspension was poured in H_2O (650 mL) and the mixture was washed with Et_2O (3 × 150 mL) to remove excess chloroquinoline (EtOAc was later found to be more efficient). The aqueous layer was acidified with aqueous 1 N HCI (38 mL of calculated 1.5 equiv. required, 43.6 mL) to pH 4 – 5. The white solid that precipitated was recovered by filtration. The moist solid was dried under reduced pressure over P_2O_5 to give the proline derivative 7 (12.6 g, 91%, contains 2.3% w/w of DMSO) as a beige solid:

¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ (2:1 mixture of rotamers) 8.27 (d, J = 7.0 Hz, 2H), 8.00, 7.98 (2d, J = 9.2, ~9.2 Hz, 1H), 7.48-7.56 (m, 3H), 7.45, 7.43 (2s, 1H), 7.39 (d, J = 2.5 Hz, 1H), 7.17 (dd, J = 9.2, 2.5 Hz, 1H), 5.53-5.59 (m, 1H), 4.34-4.41 (m, 1H), 3.93 (s, 3H), 3.76 (broad s, 2H), 2.63-2.73 (m, 1H), 2.32-2.43 (m, 1H), 1.36, 1.33 (2s, 9H).

EXAMPLE 8

15 Synthesis of Boc-4(R)-(2-phenyl-6-nitroquinoline-4-oxo) proline (8):

Diethyl azodicarboxylate (0.77 mL, 4.89 mmol) was added dropwise to a stirred solution of triphenylphosphine (1.28 g, 4.88 mmol) in 15 mL of tetrahydrofuran at 0°C. After 30 min. of stirring under nitrogen a solution of Boc-4(*S*)-hydroxyproline methyl ester (1.00 g, 4.08 mmol) was added in 5 mL of tetrahydrofuran followed by a suspension of commercially available 6-nitro-2-phenyl-4-quinolinol (1.30 g, 4.88 mmol) in 10 mL of the same solvent. The red mixture was stirred for 15 min. at 0°C and at RT overnight. The solvent was evaporated *in vacuo*. The remaining oil was diluted in ethyl acetate and washed twice with sodium bicarbonate, once with water and once with brine. The organic layer was dried (MgSO₄), filtered and evaporated *in vacuo*. The residue was chromatographed over silica gel (70:30 v/v, hexanes-

10

15

20

ethyl acetate) affording the desired methyl ester as a light yellow solid (1.70 g, 85%).

¹H NMR(CDCl₃) rotamers \cong 3:7 δ 9.03 (d, J = 2.5 Hz, 1H), 8.46 (dd, J = 9, 2.5 Hz, 1H), 8.18 (d, J = 9 Hz, 1H), 8.14-8.07 (m, 2H), 7.59-7.50 (m, 3H), 7.19 (s, 1H), 5.39-5.30 (m, 1H), 4.67 (t, J = 8 Hz, 0.3H), 4.61 (t, J = 8 Hz, 0.7H), 4.07-4.01 (m, 2H), 3.81 (s, 3H), 2.89-2.73 (m, 1H), 2.55-2.47 (m, 1H), 1.49 (s, 2.7H), 1.45 (s, 6.3H).

To a solution of the methyl ester (503 mg, 1.02 mmol) in a mixture of THF: H_2O (10:4 mL) was added lithium hydroxide monohydrate (85 mg, 2.05 mmol). 2 mL of MeOH was added in order to get an homogeneous solution. A white precipitate resulted within 30 min. The resulting suspension was stirred at RT for an additional 6 h. The reaction mixture was diluted with an aqueous solution of citric acid 10% and extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was dried (MgSO₄), filtered and evaporated *in vacuo* to afford 416 mg (85%) of the desired acid (8).

¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆): δ 8.92-8.87 (m, 1H), 8.47 (dd, J = 9, 3Hz, 1H), 8.38-8.32 (m, 2H), 8.19 (d, J = 9 Hz, 1H), 7.77 (s, 1H), 7.62-7.55 (m, 3H), 5.73-5.66 (m, 1H), 4.41 (t, J = 8 Hz, 1H), 3.89-3.76 (m, 2H), 2.83-2.72 (m, 1H), 2.47-2.35 (m, 1H), 1.38 (s, 9H).

P1 BUILDING BLOCKS

EXAMPLE 9

A) Synthesis of mixture of (1R, 2R)/(1S, 2R) 1-amino-2-ethylcyclopropyl carboxylic acid

15

20

25

57

d) 1.0 M TBAF

THF

RT to reflux

ethyl syn to ester mixture (RR)/(SR)

- a) To a suspension of benzyltriethylammonium chloride (21.0 g, 92.19 mmol) in a 50% aqueous NaOH solution (92.4 g in 185 mL $\rm H_2O$) were successively added di*tert*-butylmalonate (20.0 g, 92.47 mmol) and 1,2-dibromobutane (30.0 g, 138.93 mmol). The reaction mixture was vigorously stirred overnight at RT, a mixture of ice and water was then added. The crude product was extracted with $\rm CH_2Cl_2$ (3x) and sequentially washed with water (3x) and brine. The organic layer was dried (MgSO₄), filtered and concentrated. The residue was flash chromatographed (7 cm, 2 to 4 % $\rm Et_2O$ in hexane) to afford the desired cyclopropane derivative **9c** (19.1 g, 70.7 mmol, 76% yield). $^1\rm H$ NMR (CDCl₃) δ 1.78-1.70 (m, 1H), 1.47 (s, 9H), 1.46 (s, 9H), 1.44-1.39 (m, 1H), 1.26-1.64 (m, 3H), 1.02 (t, 3H, J= 7.6 Hz).
- b) To a suspension of potassium *tert*-butoxide (6.71g, 59.79 mmol, 4.4 eq.) in dry ether (100 mL) at 0°C was added H₂O (270 μ L, 15.00 mmol, 1.1 eq.). After 5 min diester **9c** (3.675 g, 13.59 mmol) in ether (10 mL) was added to the suspension. The reaction mixture was stirred overnight at RT, then poured in a mixture of ice and water and washed with ether (3x). The aqueous layer was acidified with a 10% aq. citric acid solution at 0°C and extracted with AcOEt (3x). The combined organic layer was successively washed with water (2x) and brine. After the usual treatment (Na₂SO₄, filtration, concentration), the desired acid **9d** was isolated as a pale yellow oil (1.86g, 8.68 mmol, 64% yield). ¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ 2.09-2.01 (m, 1H), 1.98 (dd, J= 3.8, 9.2 Hz, 1H), 1.81- 1.70 (m, 1H), 1.66 (dd, J= 3.0, J= 8.2 Hz, 1H), 1.63-1.56 (m, 1H), 1.51 (s, 9H), 1.0 (t, J= 7.3 Hz, 3H).
- c) To the acid **9d** (2.017 g, 9.414 mmol) in dry benzene (32 mL) were successively added Et₃N (1.50 mL, 10.76 mmol, 1.14 eq.) and DPPA (2.20 mL, 10.21 mmol, 1.08 eq.). The reaction mixture was refluxed for 3.5 h then 2-trimethylsilylethanol (2.70 mL, 18.84 mmol, 2.0 eq.) was added. The reflux was maintained overnight then the reaction mixture was diluted with Et₂O and successively washed with a 10 % aqueous citric acid solution, water, saturated aqueous NaHCO₃, water (2x) and brine. After the usual treatment (MgSO₄, filtration, concentration) the residue was

purified by flash chromatography (5 cm, 10% AcOEt- hexane) to afford the desired carbamate **9e** (2.60 g, 7.88 mmol, 84% yield) as a pale yellow oil. MS (FAB) 330 (MH $^+$); ¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ 5.1 (bs, 1H), 4.18-4.13 (m, 2H), 1.68-1.38 (m, 4H), 1.45 (s, 9H), 1.24-1.18 (m, 1H), 1.00-0.96 (m, 5H), 0.03 (s, 9H).

d) To carbamate **9e** (258 mg, 0.783 mmol) was added a 1.0 M TBAF solution in THF (940 μ L, 0.94 mmol, 1.2 eq.). After 4.5 h an additional amount of 1.0 M TBAF was added (626 μ L, 0.63 mmol, 0.8 eq.). The reaction mixture was stirred overnight at RT, refluxed for 30 min and then diluted with AcOEt. The solution was successively washed with water (2x) and brine. After the usual treatment (MgSO₄, filtration and concentration) the desired amine **9f** was isolated (84 mg, 0.453 mmol, 58 % yield) as a pale yellow liquid. ¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ 1.96 (bs, 2H), 1.60-1.40 (m, 2H), 1.47 (s, 9H), 1.31-1.20 (m, 1H), 1.14 (dd, J= 4.1, 7.3 Hz, 1H), 1.02 (dd, J= 4.1, 9.2 Hz, 1H), 0.94 (t, J= 7.3 Hz, 3H).

EXAMPLE 10

5

10

20

25

15 Chemical resolution of *t*-butyl-(1R, 2R)/(1S, 2R) 1-amino-2-ethylcyclopropyl carboxylate (from Example 9):

Isomers separated by column chromatography.

RR Isomer SR Isomer

Compound **9e** from Example 9 (8.50 g , 25.86 mmol) was treated with 1M TBAF/THF (26 mL) at reflux for 45 min. The cooled reaction mixture was diluted with EtOAc, washed with water (3x) and brine (1x), then, dried (MgSO₄), filtered and evaporated to provide the free amine as a light yellow oil. The free amine was dissolved in anhydrous CH₂Cl₂ (120 mL) , NMM (8.5 mL , 77.57 mmol), compound **4** (Example 4) (10.08 g, 27.15 mmol) and HATU (11.79 g , 31.03 mmol) were added successively. The reaction mixture was stirred at RT overnight, then worked up as described previously. The crude diastereomeric mixture was separated by flash

chromatography (eluent – hexane : Et_2O ; 25 : 75) to provide the dipeptide **10a** (the less polar eluting spot) as a white foam (4.42 g; 64% of the theoretical yield) and **10b** (the more polar eluting spot) as an ivory foam (4 g., 57% of theoretical yield). At this time both isomers were separated but the absolute stereochemistry was still not known.

EXAMPLE 11

5

Determination of the absolute stereochemistry of compounds 10a and 10b by correlation with known t-butyl (1R-amino-2R-ethylcyclopropyl carboxylate

Direct comparison by TLC, HPLC and NMR

Prof . A. Charette , from the University of Montreal , provided compound 11a having the absolute stereochemistry as shown, which was determined by X-ray crystallography (J. Am. Chem. Soc., 1995, 117, 12721) . Compound 11a (13.2 mg, 0.046 mmol) was dissolved in 1M HCI/EtOAc (240 μL) and stirred approximately 48 hours. The mixture was evaporated to dryness to provide compound 11b as a light yellow paste and was coupled to compound 4 (18 mg , 0.049 mmol) as described in Example 10, using NMM (20.3 μL , 0.185 mmol) and HATU (21.1 mg , 0.056 mmol) in CH₂Cl₂. The crude material was purified by flash chromatography (eluent – hexane : Et₂O ; 50:50) to provide the dipeptide 11c as an oil (7.7 mg ; 31%). By TLC, HPLC and NMR comparison , dipeptide 11c, was found to be identical to the less polar compound 10a obtained in Example 10, thus identifying the absolute

stereochemistry of 10a as (1R,2R).

EXAMPLE 12

5

10

15

20

Preparation of (1R, 2R)/(1S, 2R) 1-Boc-amino-2-ethylcyclopropylcarboxylic acid: (12a)

The carbamate **9e** from Example 9 (2.6 g, 7.88 mmol) was stirred for 40 min in TFA at 0 °C. The mixture was then concentrated and diluted with THF (10 mL). An aqueous NaOH solution (700 mg, 17.5 mmol in 8.8 mL of H2O) was added followed by a THF (13 mL) solution of (Boc)₂O (2.06 g, 9.44 mmol, 1.2 eq.). The reaction mixture was stirred overnight at RT(the pH was maintained at 8 by adding a 10 % aqueous NaOH solution when needed), then diluted with H_2O , washed with Et_2O (3X) and acidified at 0 °C with a 10 % aq. citric acid solution. The aqueous layer was extracted with EtOAc (3X) and successively washed with H_2O (2X) and brine. After the usual treatment (MgSO₄, filtration and concentration) the desired Boc-protected amino acid (**12a**) (788 mg, 3.44 mmol, 44 % yield) was isolated. ¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ 5.18 (bs, 1H), 1.64-1.58 (m, 2H), 1.55-1.42 (m, 2H), 1.45 (s, 9H), 1.32-1.25 (m, 1H), 0.99 (t, 3H, J= 7.3 Hz).

Preparation of (1R, 2R)/(1S, 2R)-1-Boc-amino-2-ethylcyclopropylcarboxylic acid methyl ester: (12b)

$$\begin{array}{c|c}
 & CH_2N_2/Et_2O \\
 & N \\
 & CO_2H \\
\hline
 & CO_2Me \\
\hline
 & O^{\circ}C \\
\hline
 & 12b \\
\end{array}$$

The Boc derivative 12a (0.30 g, 1.31 mmol) was dissolved in Et_2O (10 mL) and treated with freshly prepared diazomethane in Et_2O at 0 °C until the yellow color of a slight excess of diazomethane remained. After stirring for 20 min at RT the reaction mixture was concentrated to dryness to give 12b as a clear colorless oil (0.32 g,

100%). 1 H NMR (CDCl₃) δ 5.1 (bs, 1H), 3.71 (s, 3H), 1.62-1.57 (m, 2H), 1.55 (s, 9H), 1.53-1.43 (m, 1H), 1.28-1.21 (m, 2H), 0.95 (t, J = 7.3 Hz, 3H).

EXAMPLE 13

5

10

15

20

Enzymatic resolution of methyl (1R, 2R)/(1S, 2R) Boc-1-amino-2-ethylcyclopropyl carboxylate:

- *Analysis by HPLC using Chiralcel® OD-H column
- ** Other esters also acceptable (eg. Et)
- a) The enantiomeric mixture of (1S, 2R)/(1R, 2R) 1-Boc-amino-2-ethylcarboxylic acid methyl ester of Example 10 (0.31 g, 1.27 mmol) was dissolved in acetone (3 mL) and then diluted with water (7 mL) while being rapidly stirred. The pH of the solution was adjusted to 7.5 with 0.05M aqueous NaOH before Alcalase® [2.4L extract from Novo Nordisk Industrials] (300 mg) was added. During incubation pH was stabilized with NaOH and a pH stat was set up to monitor the addition of the NaOH solution. After 40 h the mixture was diluted with EtOAc and H₂O (with 5 mL sat. NaHCO₃) and the phases separated. The aqueous phase was acidified with 10% aqueous HCl and extracted with EtOAc, dried (MgSO₄), filtered and concentrated to give acid 13a (48.5 mg). The absolute stereochemistry was determined using the correlation described in Examples 10 and 11.
- b) Treatment of an aliquot of acid **13a** with diazomethane in Et₂O to give the methyl ester followed by analysis by HPLC using a chiral column [Chiralcel® OD-H, 2.5% Isopropanol/hexane, isocratic] showed a 51:1 ratio of the (S,R) isomer.

EXAMPLE 14

Synthesis of (1R, 2S)/(1S, 2S) 1-amino-2-ethylcyclopropyl carboxylic acid:

62 c) DBU, Br CH₃CN allylO2C CO₂tBu CO₂tBu RT 14a ethyl syn to the ester e) Et₃N, DPPA, benzene then 2-trimethylsilylethano d) TFA, CH₂C reflux RT ally1000C **೦೦್ಯ**H SiMe₃ 14b 14c f)1.0 M TBAF THF allylOOC RT to reflux 14d ethyl anti to the acid (RS) / (SS)

Starting from acid 9d described in Example 9:

- c) To **9d** (1.023 g, 4.77 mmol) in CH₃CN (25 mL) were successively added DBU (860 μL, 5.75 mmol, 1.2 eq.) and allyl bromide (620 μL, 7.16 mmol, 1.5 eq.). The reaction mixture was stirred for 4 h at RT and then concentrated. The residue was diluted with Et₂O and successively washed with a 10 % aq. citric acid solution (2x), H₂O, saturated aqueous NaHCO₃, H₂O (2x) and brine. After the usual treatment (MgSO₄, filtration and concentration) the desired ester **14a** was isolated (1.106 g, 3.35 mmol, 91 % yield) as a colorless oil. MS (FAB) 255 (MH⁺); ¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ 5.96-5.86 (m, 1H), 5.37-5.22 (m, 2H), 4.70-4.65 (m, 1H), 4.57-4.52 (m, 1H), 1.87-1.79 (m, 1H), 1.47 (s, 9H), 1.45-1.40 (m, 1H), 1.33-1.24 (m, 3H), 1.03 (t, J=7.3 Hz, 3H).
- d) To ester 14a (1.106 g, 4.349 mmol) in dry CH₂Cl₂ (5 mL) at RT was added TFA (5 mL). The reaction mixture was stirred for 1.5 h and then concentrated to afford 14b (854 mg, 4.308 mmol, 99 % yield). MS (FAB) 199 (MH⁺); ¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ 5.99-5.79 (m, 1H), 5.40-5.30 (m, 2H), 4.71-4.62 (m, 2H), 2.22-2.00 (m, 2H), 1.95-1.88 (m, 1H), 1.84-1.57 (m, 2H), 0.98 (t, J= 7.3 Hz, 3H).
- e) To acid **14b** (853 mg, 4.30 mmol) in dry benzene (14.8 mL) were successively added Et₃N (684 μL, 4.91 mmol, 1.14 eq.) and DPPA (992 μL, 4.60 mmol, 1.07 eq.). The reaction mixture was refluxed for 4.5 h then 2-trimethylsilylethanol (1.23 mL, 8.58 mmol, 2.0 eq.) was added. The reflux was maintained overnight then the

reaction mixture was diluted with Et₂O and successively washed with a 10 % aqueous citric acid solution, water, saturated aq. NaHCO₃, water (2x) and brine. After the usual treatment (MgSO₄, filtration, concentration) the residue was flash chromatographed (5 cm, 10 to 15 % AcOEt- hexane) to afford carbamate **14c** (1.212g, 3.866 mmol, 90 % yield) as a pale yellow oil. MS (FAB) 314 (MH⁺); ¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ 5.93-5.84 (m, 1H), 5.32-5.20 (m, 2H), 5.05 (bs, 1H), 4.60-4.56 (m, 2H), 4.20-4.11 (m, 2H), 1.71-1.60 (m, 3H), 1.39-1.22 (m, 1H), 1.03 (t, J= 7.6 Hz, 3H), 0.96-0.86 (m, 1H), 0.04 (s, 9H).

f) To carbamate **14c** (267 mg, 0.810 mmol) was added a 1.0 M TBAF solution in THF (1.62 mL, 1.62 mmol, 2.0 eq.). The reaction mixture was stirred overnight at RT, refluxed for 30 min and then diluted with AcOEt. The solution was successively washed with water (2x) and brine. After the usual treatment (MgSO₄, filtration and concentration) the desired amine **14d** was isolated (122 mg, 0.721 mmol, 89 % yield) as a pale yellow liquid. ¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ 5.94-5.86 (m,1H), 5.31-5.22 (m, 2H), 4.58 (d, J= 5.7 Hz, 2H), 1.75 (bs, 2H), 1.61-1.53 (m, 2H), 1.51-1.42 (m, 2H), 1.00 (t, J= 7.3 Hz, 3H), 0.70-0.62 (m, 1H).

EXAMPLE 15

Synthesis of ethyl-(1R,2S)/(1S,2S)-1-amino-2-vinylcyclopropyl carboxylate:

a) To a THF solution (180 mL) of potassium *tert*-butoxide (4.62 g, 41.17 mmol, 1.1 eq.) at –78°C was added commercially available imine **15a** (10.0 g, 37.41 mmol) in THF (45 mL). The reaction mixture was warmed to 0°C and stirred at this temperature for 40 min. The mixture was then cooled back to –78°C for the addition of 1,4-dibromobutene **15b** (8.0 g, 37.40 mmol) and then stirred at 0°C for 1 h and

10

20

25

cooled back to -78 °C for the addition of potassium *tert*-butoxide (4.62 g, 41.17 mmol, 1.1 eq.). The reaction mixture was finally stirred one more hour at 0°C and concentrated to yield compound **15c**.

b, c, d) **15c** was taken up in Et₂O (265 mL) and treated with a 1N aq. HCl solution (106 mL). After 3.5 h at RT, the layers were separated and the aqueous layer was washed with Et₂O (2x) and basified with a saturated aq. NaHCO₃ solution. The desired amine was extracted with Et₂O (3x) and the combined organic extract was washed with brine. After the usual treatment (MgSO₄, filtration and concentration) the residue was treated with a 4N HCl solution in dioxane (187 mL, 748 mmol). After concentration, hydrochloride salt **15d** was isolated as a brown solid (2.467 g, 12.87 mmol, 34 % yield). ¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ 9.17 (bs, 3H), 5.75-5.66 (m, 1H), 5.39 (d, J= 17.2 Hz, 1H), 5.21 (d, J= 10.2 Hz, 1H), 4.35-4.21 (m, 2H), 2.77-2.70 (m, 1H), 2.05 (dd, J= 6.4, 10.2 Hz, 1H), 1.75 (dd, J= 6.4, 8.3 Hz, 1H), 1.33 (t, J= 7.0 Hz, 3H).

EXAMPLE 16

Preparation of (1R,2S/1S,2S)-1-Boc-amino-2-vinylcyclopropyl carboxylic acid ethyl ester:

vinyl syn to ester

The hydrochloride salt **15d** (1.0 g, 5.2 mmol) and (Boc)₂O (1.2 g, 5.7 mmol) were dissolved in THF (30 mL) and treated with DMAP (0.13 g, 1.04 mmol, 0.2 equiv.) and diisopropylethylamine (2.8 mL, 15.6 mmol). The reaction mixture was stirred 24 h before being diluted with EtOAc (40 mL) and washed successively with sat. NaHCO₃ (aq), 5% aqueous HCl, and sat. brine. The organic phase was dried (MgSO₄), filtered and concentrated to give after purification by flash chromatography (15% EtOAc/hexane), **16a** (0.29 g, 23%). ¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ 5.80-5.72 (m, 1H), 5.29-5.25 (dd, J = 17.2, 17.2 Hz, 1H), 5.24-5.1 (bs, 1H), 5.10 (dd, J = 9.2, 9.2 Hz, 1H), 4.22-4.13 (m, 2H), 2.15-2.04 (m, 1H), 1.85-1.73 (bs, 1H), 1.55-1.5 (m, 1H), 1.49 (s, 9H), 1.26 (t, J = 7.3 Hz, 3H).

EXAMPLE 17

Enzymatic resolution of ethyl (1R,2S)/(1S,2S) 1-amino-2-vinylcyclopropyl carboxylate:

*Analysis by HPLC using Chiralcel® OD-H column

- a) Racemic derivative 17a (0.29 g, 1.14 mmol) was dissolved in acetone (5 mL) and diluted with H₂O (10 mL). The pH was adjusted with 0.2N aqueous NaOH to 7.2 before Alcalase® was added (300 mg). To keep the pH constant during incubation, a NaOH solution was added by a pH stat titrator over 9 days until the theoretical amount of base had been added. Following acid/base extraction as described in Example 13, the unhydrolyzed ester (0.15 g, 100%) and the hydrolyzed material (0.139 g, 95%) were isolated. Analysis of the unhydrolyzed ester by HPLC using a chiral column showed a ratio of 43:1 of the desired compound 17c that was assigned the (R,S) stereochemistry based on chemical correlation as described in Examples 10 and 11.
- 15 Conditions for HPLC analysis: Chiralcel® OD-H (4.6 mm x 25 cm), isocratic conditions using a mobile phase of 2.5% isopropanol/hexane.

EXAMPLE 18

Resolution of (1R,2S)/(1S,2S) 1-amino-2-vinylcyclopropyl carboxylate by crystallization with dibenzoyl-D-tartaric acid

20

To a solution of crude racemic (1S,2S and 1R, 2S) ethyl 1-amino-2-vinylcyclopropyl carboxylate [obtained from N-(diphenylmethylene)glycine ethyl ester (25.0 g, 93.5 mol) as described in Example 15] in EtOAc (800 mL) was added dibenzoyl-D-tartaric acid (33.5 g, 93.5 mol). The mixture was heated to reflux, left at RT for 15 min then

10

15

25

cooled to 0°C. A white solid was obtained after 30 min. The solid was filtered, washed with EtOAc (100 mL) and air-dried. The solid was suspended in acetone (70 mL), sonicated and filtered (3x). The solid was next recrystallized twice in hot acetone (crop A). The mother liquors were concentrated and the residue was recrystallized three times in hot acetone (crop B). The two crops of the amorphous white solids of dibenzoyl-D-tartaric acid salt were combined (5.53 g) and suspended in a mixture of Et₂O (250 mL) and saturated NaHCO₃ solution (150 mL). The organic layer was washed with brine, dried (MgSO₄) and filtered. The filtrate was diluted with 1 N HCI/Et₂O (100 mL) and concentrated under reduced pressure. The oily residue was evaporated with CCl₄ to afford ethyl 1(R)-amino-2(S)-vinyl cyclopropanecarboxylate hydrochloride (940 mg, 11% yield) as a white hygroscopic solid: $[\alpha]_D^{25}$ +39.5°C (c 1.14 MeOH); $[\alpha]_{365}^{25}$ +88.5°C (c 1.14 MeOH); ¹H NMR (DMSO d_6) δ 9.07 (broad s, 2H), 5.64 (ddd, J=17.2, 10.4, 8.7 Hz, 1H), 5.36 (dd, J=17.2, 1.6 Hz, 1H), 5.19 (dd, J=10.4, 1.6 Hz, 1H), 4.24-4.16 (m, 2H), 2.51-2.45 (m, peaks hindered by DMSO, 1H), 1.84 (dd, J=10.0, 6.0 Hz, 1H), 1.64 (dd, J=8.3, 6.0 Hz, 1H), 1.23 (t, J=7.1 Hz, 3H); MS (ESI) m/z 156 (MH)+; the enantiomeric purity was determined to be 91% ee by HPLC analysis (CHIRALPAK AS® column, Hex:i-PrOH) of the Boc derivative.

EXAMPLE 19

20 Preparation of (1R,2S)/(1S, 2S)-1-amino-2-vinylcyclopropane carboxylic acid methyl-ester hydrochloride (19f)

Preparation of imine 19b

Glycine ethyl ester hydrochloride **19a** (1519.2 g, 10.88 mole, 1.0 equiv) was suspended in tert-butylmethyl ether (8 L). Benzaldehyde (1155 g, 10.88 mole, 1 equiv) and anhydrous sodium sulfate (773 g, 5.44 mole, 05 equiv) were added and

10

15

20

25

30

the mixture cooled to 5 °C in an ice-water bath. Triethylamine (2275 mL, 16.32 mole, 1.5 equiv) was added dropwise over 15 min (use 0.5 L of tert-butylmethyl ether for rinses) and the mixture stirred for 40 h at room temperature. The reaction was then quenched by addition of ice-cold water (5 L) and the organic layer was separated. The aqueous phase was extracted with tert-butylmethyl ether (1 L) and the combined organic phases washed with a mixture of saturated NaHCO₃ (400 mL) and water (1.6 L), and then brine. The solution was dried over MgSO₄, concentrated under reduced pressure and the residual yellow oil dried to constant weight under vacuum. Imine **19b** was obtained as a thick yellow oil that solidifies at –20 °C (2001 g, 96% yield): 1 H NMR (CDCl₃, 400 MHz) δ 8.30 (s, 1H), 7.79 (m, 2H), 7.48-7.39 (m, 3H), 4.40 (d, J = 1.3 Hz, 2H), 4.24 (q, J = 7Hz, 2H), 1.31 (t, J = 7 Hz, 3H).

carboxylic acid ethyl-ester hydrochloride 19e:

Lithium tert-butoxide (4.203 g, 52.5 mmol, 2.1 equiv) was suspended in dry toluene (60 mL). Imine 19b (5.020 g, 26.3 mmol, 1.05 equiv) and dibromide 19c (5.348 g, 25 mmol, 1 equiv) were dissolved in dry toluene (30 mL) and this solution added dropwise over 30 min to the stirred solution of LiOtBu at room temperature. After completion, the deep red mixture was stirred for an additional 10 min and quenched by addition of water (50 mL) and tert-butylmethyl ether (TBME, 50 mL). The aqueous phase was separated and extracted a second time with TBME (50 mL). The organic phases were combined, 1 N HCI (60 mL) was added and the mixture stirred at room temperature for 2 h. The organic phase was separated and extracted with water (40 mL). The aqueous phases were then combined, saturated with salt (35 g) and TBME (50 mL) was added. The stirred mixture was then basified to pH 13-14 by careful addition of 10 N NaOH. The organic layer was separated and the aqueous phase extracted with TBME (2 × 50 mL). The organic extracts containing free amine 19d were combined and ditertbutyldicarbonate (5.46 g, 25 mmol, 1 equiv) was added. After stirring overnight at room temperature, TLC showed some unreacted free amine. Additional ditertbutyldicarbonate (1.09 g, 5 mmol, 0.2 equiv) was added and the mixture refluxed for 2 h, at which point, TLC analysis indicated complete conversion of 19d to carbamate 19e. The solution was cooled to room temperature, dried over MgSO₄ and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by flash chromatography using 10% then 20% EtOAc / hexane

as eluent. Purified 19e was obtained as a clear yellow oil which slowly solidifies

under vacuum (4.014 g, 63% yield).

 1 H NMR (CDCl₃, 400 MHz) δ 5.77 (ddd, J = 17, 10, 9 Hz, 1H), 5.28 (dd, J = 17, 1.5 Hz, 1H), 5.18 (broad s, 1H), 5.11 (dd J = 10, 1.5 Hz, 1H), 4.24-4.09 (m, 2H), 2.13 (q, J = 8.5 Hz, 1H), 1.79 (broad m, 1H), 1.46 (m, 1H), 1.45 (s, 9H), 1.26 (t, J = 7 Hz, 3H).

- Preparation of title compound **19f** via trans-esterification of **19e**:

 Ethyl ester **19e** (10.807 g, 42.35 mmol) was dissolved in dry methanol (50 mL) and a solution of sodium methoxide in MeOH (25 % w/w, 9.7 mL, 42 mmol, 1 equivalent) was added. The mixture was heated at 50 °C for 2 h, at which point TLC analysis indicated complete trans-esterification (**19e** R₁ 0.38, **19f** R₁ 0.34 in 20%
- 10 EtOAc/hexane). The reaction mixture was cooled to room temperature and acidified to pH 4 using 4N HCl in dioxane. Precipitated NaCl was removed by filtration (use tert-butylmethyl ether for washings) and volatiles removed under reduced pressure. Tert-butylmethyl ether (100 mL) was added to the residue and solids removed by filtration. Evaporation of the filtrate under reduced pressure and drying under vacuum gave pure methyl ester 19f (10.11 g, 99% yield).

 1 H NMR (CDCl₃, 400 MHz) δ 5.75 (ddd, J = 17, 10, 9 Hz, 1H), 5.28 (dd, J = 17, 1 Hz, 1H), 5.18 (broad s, 1H), 5.11 (ddd, J = 10, 1.5, 0.5 Hz, 1H), 3.71 (s, 3H), 2.14 (q, J = 9 Hz, 1H), 1.79 (broad m, 1H), 1.50 (broad m, 1H), 1.46 (s, 9H).

EXAMPLE 20

20 Enzymatic resolution of (1R,2S)-1-amino-2-vinylcyclopropane carboxylic acid methyl-ester hydrochloride

Preparation of N-Boc-(1R,2S)-1-amino-2-vinylcyclopropane carboxylic acid methyl

ester 20a:

10

20

25

Racemic ester **19f** (0.200 g, 0.83 mmol) was dissolved in acetone (3 mL) and water (7 mL) was added. 0.05 M NaOH (1 drop) was added to bring the pH of the solution to ~8 and then Alcalase® 2.4L (Novo Nordisk Biochem, 0.3 g in one mL of water) was added. The mixture was stirred vigorously at room temperature, maintaining the pH of the solution at 8 using an automatic titrator. At beginning of day 4 and 5 of stirring at pH 8, additional enzyme solution was added (2 × 0.3 g). After a total of 5 days, a total of 8.3 mL of 0.05 M NaOH was consumed. The reaction mixture was diluted with EtOAc and water and the organic phase separated. After washing with brine, the organic extract was dried (MgSO₄) and concentrated under vacuum. Compound **20a** (0.059 g, 30% yield) was obtained as a clear oil: ¹H NMR identical to that of compound **19f**. HPLC (Chiralcel ODH, 4.6 × 250 mm, isocratic 1% EtOH in hexane, 0.8 mL/min flow rate): (1R,2S)-2 R_t 19.3 min (97%); (1S,2R)-2 R_t 17.0 min (3%).

Preparation of (1R,2S)-1-amino-2-vinylcyclopropane carboxylic acid methyl ester hydrochloride **20b**:

Compound **20a** (39.96 g, 165.7 mmol) was dissolved in dioxane (25 mL) and the solution added dropwise with stirring to 4 N HCl in dioxane (Aldrich, 250 mL). After 45 min, TLC analysis indicated complete deprotection. Volatiles were removed under reduced pressure, and the residue co-evaporated twice with MeOH (2 × 100 mL). Ether (300 mL) and MeOH (10 mL) were added to the brown, oily residue and the mixture stirred overnight at room temperature resulting in the precipitation of a semi-solid. Additional MeOH (15 mL) was added and stirring continued for 6 h, at which point a yellowish solid was collected by filtration. The product was washed with 5% MeOH in ether (50 mL) and ether (2 × 50 mL), and dried *in vacuo* to give compound **20b** as a yellowish solid (22.60 g, 76% yield). Filtrates (including washings) were evaporated in vacuum to give additional **20b** as a brown oil (7.82 g, 26% yield). Both fractions were pure enough for use in the synthesis of HCV protease inhibitors: $[\alpha]_D^{25} + 38.2^\circ$ (c 1.0, MeOH).

¹H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d₆) δ 9.15 (broad s, 3H), 5.65 (ddd, J = 17, 10, 9 Hz, 1H), 5.36 (dd, J = 17, 1.5 Hz, 1H), 5.19 (dd, J = 10, 1.5 Hz, 1H), 3.74 (s, 3H), 2.50 (q, overlap with DMSO signal, J = 9 Hz, 1H), 1.86 (dd, J = 10, 6 Hz, 1H), 1.64 (dd, J = 8, 6 Hz, 1H).

EXAMPLE 21

Synthesis of 1-aminocyclobutyl carboxylic acid methyl ester

1,1-aminocyclobutanecarboxylic acid was prepared according to Kavin Douglas; Ramaligam Kondareddiar; Woodard Ronald, Synth. Commun. (1985), 15 (4), 267-72. The amino acid salt (21a) (1.00 g., 6.6 mmoles) was stirred in dry methanol (40 ml) at –20°C and mixture saturated with dry hydrogen chloride to yield (21b). Stirring of this mixture was continued for 4 h. The hot solution was filtered and filtrate concentrated (Rotavap, 30°C) to leave a residue which upon trituration in ethyl ether afforded a white powder (0.907 g., 83%) after filtration and drying. ¹H NMR (400MHz, D₂) δ CH₃O (3H, s, 3.97 ppm); CH₂ (2H, m, 2.70-2.77 ppm); CH₂ (2H, m, 2.45-2.53 ppm) and CH₂ (2H, m, 2.14-2.29 ppm).

TRIPEPTIDES

EXAMPLE 22

5

10

20

25

15 General procedure for coupling reactions done on solid support.

The synthesis was done on a parallel synthesizer model ACT396 from Advanced ChemTech® with the 96 well block. Typically, 24 peptides were synthesized in parallel using standard solid-phase techniques. The starting (Fmocamino)cyclopropane (optionally substituted) carboxylic acid-Wang resin were prepared by the DCC/DMAP coupling method (Atherton, E; Scheppard, R.C. *Solid Phase Peptide Synthesis, a Practical Approach*; IRL Press: Oxford (1989); pp 131-148).

Each well was loaded with 100 mg of the starting resin (approximately 0.05 mmol). The resins were washed successively with 1.5 mL portions of NMP (1 X) and DMF (3 X). The Fmoc protecting group was removed by treatment with 1.5 mL of a 25% v/v solution of piperidine in DMF for 20 minutes. The resins were washed with 1.5 mL portions of DMF (4 X), MeOH (3 X) and DMF (3 X). The coupling was done in DMF

(350 μ L), using 400 μ L (0.2 mmol) of a 0.5M solution of Fmoc-amino acid/HOBt hydrate in DMF, 400 μ L (0.4 mmol) of a 1M solution of DIPEA in DMF and 400 μ L (0.2 mmol) of a 0.5M solution of TBTU in DMF. After shaking for 1 hour, the wells were drained, the resins were washed with 1.5 mL of DMF and the coupling was repeated once more under the same conditions. The resins were then washed as described above and the cycle was repeated with the next amino acid.

The capping groups were introduced in two ways:

- 1. In the form of a carboxylic acid using the protocol described above (for example acetic acid) or,
- 2. As an acylating agent such as an anhydride or an acid chloride. The following 10 example illustrates the capping with succinic anhydride: After the Fmoc deprotection and subsequent washing protocol, DMF was added (350 μL), followed by 400 μL each of a DMF solution of succinic anhydride (0.5 M, 0.2 mmol) and DIPEA (1.0 M, 0.4 mmol). The resins were stirred for 2 h and a recoupling step was performed. At the end of the synthesis the resin was washed with 1.5 mL portions of DCM (3x), 15 MeOH (3x), DCM (3x), and were dried under vacuum for 2 h. The cleavage from the resin and concomitant side chain deprotection was effected by the addition of 1.5 mL of a mixture of TFA, H₂O, DTT and TIS (92.5: 2.5: 2.5: 2.5). After shaking for 2.5 h, the resin was filtered and washed with 1.5 mL of DCM. The filtrates were combined and concentrated by vacuum centrifugation. Each compound was purified by 20 preparative reversed phase HPLC using a C18 column (22 mm by 500 mm). The product-containing fractions were identified by MALDI-TOF mass spectrometry, combined and lyophilized.

EXAMPLE 23

30

25 General procedure for coupling reactions done in solution {See also R. Knorr et al., Tetrahedron Letters, (1989), 30, 1927.}

The reactants, i.e. a free amine (1 eq.) (or its hydrochloride salt) and the free carboxylic acid (1 eq.) were dissolved in CH₂Cl₂, CH₃CN or DMF. Under a nitrogen atmosphere, four equivalents of *N*-methylmorpholine and 1.05 equivalents of the coupling agent were added to the stirred solution. After 20 min, one equivalent of the second reactant, i.e. a free carboxylic acid was added. (Practical and efficient coupling reagents for this purpose are (benzotriazol-1-yloxy)tris-

(dimethylamino)phosphonium hexafluorophosphate (HOBT) or preferably 2-(1H-benzotriazol-1-yl)-*N*,*N*,*N*',*N*'-tetramethyluronium tetrafluoroborate (TBTU) or O-(7-azabenzotriazol-1-yl)-*N*,*N*,*N*',*N*'-tetramethyluronium tetrafluoroborate (HATU). The reaction was monitored by TLC. After completion of the reaction, the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was dissolved in EtOAc. The solution was washed successively with 10% aqueous citric acid, saturated aqueous NaHCO₃ and brine. The organic phase was dried (MgSO₄), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. When the residue was purified, it was done by flash chromatography as defined above.

10 **EXAMPLE 24**

5

15

20

Synthesis of compound 304

- a) The (R,R) isomer of Boc-Et-Acca-OMe **13c** (0.12 g, 0.49 mmol) obtained from enzymatic resolution (Example 13) was treated with 4N HCl/dioxane (45 min) before being concentrated *in vacuo* to give a white solid. To this HCl salt (ca. 0.49 mmol) was added TBTU (0.17 g, 0.54 mmol), the Boc-4(R)-(8-quinoline-methyloxy) proline 5 (from Example 5) (0.18 g, 0.49 mmol) and DIPEA (0.3 mL, 1.7 mmol) in MeCN (10 mL). The mixture was stirred at RT for 3.5 h before being concentrated *in vacuo*. The resulting material was dissolved in EtOAc and washed sequentially with saturated aqueous NaHCO₃ and brine. Dried (MgSO₄), filtered and concentrated to give **24b** a white solid (0.122 g, 50%).
- b) 24b (0.12 g, 0.25 mmol) was treated at RT with 4N HCl/dioxane (30 min) before

being concentrated *in vacuo*. The resulting hydrochloride salt (ca. 0.25 mmol) was treated with Boc-Chg-OH•H₂O (75 mg, 0.27 mmol), TBTU (87 mg, 0.27 mmol) in MeCN (10 mL) and finally at 0°C with DIPEA (0.15 mL, 0.87 mmol). The residue was diluted with EtOAc, sequentially washed with saturated aqueous NaHCO₃, and brine, dried (MgSO₄), filtered and concentrated to give **24c** as an off white solid (0.2 g). This material (0.14 g) was dissolved in DMSO and purified by preparative HPLC to give **24c** as a white solid after lyophilization (35 mg, 33%). HPLC (98%); MS (FAB) m/z: 637.3 (MH⁺); HRMS calcd for C₃₅H₄₈N₄O₇ (MH⁺) 637.36011: found 637.36250; ¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) shows a rotamer population, δ 8.91 (2 x d, J = 4.1 and 4.1 Hz, 1H), 8.40-8.36 (m, 2H), 7.90 (d, J = 7.6 Hz, 1H), 7.77 (d, J = 7.0 Hz, 1H), 7.6-7.54 (m, 2H), 6.80 (d, J = 8.6 Hz, 1H), 5.18 and 5.16 (2 x s, 2H), 4.40 (bs, 1H), 4.31 (t, J = 8.3 Hz, 1H), 4.12 (d, J = 11.44 Hz, 1H), 4.03 (t, J = 7.9 Hz, 1H), 3.78-3.72 (m, 1H), 3.56 (s, 3H), 2.35-2.27 (m, 1H), 2.06-1.97 (m, 1H), 1.71-1.55 (m, 10H), 1.53-1.38 (m, 2H), 1.26 (s, 9H), 1.18-1.06 (m, 2H), 1.02-0.93 (m, 2H), 0.89 (t, J = 7.3 Hz, 3H).

15 **compound 304:**

10

20

25

c) To **24c** (30 mg, ca. 0.047 mmol) was added MeOH (1 mL), THF (1 mL), and lithium hydroxide monohydrate (12 mg, 0.29 mmol) in H₂O (1 mL). The clear solution was stirred rapidly for 48 h before being concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude peptide was dissolved in DMSO and purified by preparative HPLC to give compound **304** as a white solid after lyophilization (21 mg, 72%). HPLC (99%); MS (FAB) m/z: (MH⁺) 623.3; HRMS calcd for $C_{34}H_{46}N_4O_7$ (MH⁺) 623.34448, found: 623.34630, ¹HNMR (DMSO-d₆) shows a rotamer population of 1:1, δ 8.90 (2 x d, J = 4.1 Hz, 1H), 8.37 (d, J = 8.3 Hz, 1H), 8.26 (s, 1H), 7.89 (d, J = 8.3 Hz, 1H), 7.77 (d, J = 6.7 Hz, 1H), 7.6-7.53 (m, 2H), 6.88 and 6.79 (2 x d, J = 8.6 and 7.9 Hz, 1H), 5.17 and 5.16 (2 x s, 2H), 4.43-4.35 (bs, 1H), 4.29 (t, J = 8.3 Hz, 1H), 3.82-3.71 (m, 1H), 2.35-2.27 (m, 1H), 2.06-1.97 (m, 1H), 1.72-1.53 (m, 10H), 1.52-1.44 (m, 2H), 1.37 and 1.29 (2 x s, 9H), 1.18-1.05 (m, 3H), 1.0-0.94 (m, 1H), 0.91 (t, J = 7.3 Hz, 3H).

EXAMPLE 25

Synthesis of compound 301

PCT/CA99/00736

WO 00/09543

a) Compound 25a (=12a) (282 mg, 1.23 mmol) was suspended in anhydrous CH₃CN (6 mL). DBU (221 µL , 1.48 mmol) and benzylbromide (161 µL , 1.35 mmol) were added successively and the reaction mixture was stirred overnight at RT. The mixture was concentrated, the resulting oil was diluted with EtOAc and 10% aq. citric acid and successively washed with 10% citric acid (2x), saturated aq. NaHCO3 (2x), water (2x) and brine (1x). The EtOAc layer was dried (MgSO₄), filtered and evaporated to dryness. The crude colorless oil was purified by flash chromatography (eluent - hexane: EtOAc; 95:5 to 90:10) to provide the benzylated product 25b as a colorless oil (368mg; 93%).

5

10

MS (FAB) 318.2 MH 320.2 MH 342.2 (M+Na)+ ¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ 7.37-7.28 (m, 5H), 5.22-5.10 (m, 1H), 5.19 (d, J= 12 Hz, 1H), 5.16 (d, J= 12 Hz, 1H), 1.60-1.40 (m, 4H), 1.39 (s, 9H), 1.31-1.22 (m, 1H), 0.91 (t, J= 7.5, 14.5 Hz, 3H).

b) Compound 25b (368 mg, 1.15 mmol) was treated with 4N HCI/dioxane (6 mL) as 15 described previously. The crude hydrochloride salt was coupled to compound 4 (from Example 4) (470.8 mg, 1.27 mmol) with NMM (507µL, 4.61 mmol) and HATU (instead of TBTU, 525.6 mg, 1.38 mmol) in CH₂Cl₂ (6 mL) as described in Example 22 to yield the crude racemic dipeptide as an orange oil. The crude material was

purified by flash chromatography (eluent - hexane : Et_2O ; 50:50) to provide the pure dipeptide **25c** (the less polar eluting spot) as a white foam (223mg; 68 % of the theoretical yield).

MS 571.4 MH 573.3 MH 595.3 (M+Na)+

- ¹H NMR (CDCl₃), ca.1:1 mixture of rotamers, δ 8.03 (b d, J= 8 Hz, 1H), 7.86 (b d, J= 7.5 Hz, 1H), 7.82 (b d, J= 6.5 Hz, 1H), 7.61 (b s, 0.5H), 7.57-7.40(m, 4H), 7.31-7.21 (m, 5H), 6.48 (b s, 0.5H), 5.22-5.11 (m, 1H), 5.08-4.81 (m, 3H), 4.41-3.74 (m, 3H), 3.49-3.18 (m, 1H), 2.76-1.90 (m, 2H), 1.69-1.48 (m, 3H), 1.40 (s, 9H), 1.40-1.23 (m, 2H), 0.92 (t, J= 7.5, 15 Hz, 3H).
- c) The dipeptide 25c (170.1 mg , 0.297 mmol) was treated with 4N HCl/dioxane (2mL) as described previously. The crude hydrochloride salt was coupled to Boc-Chg-OH (84.1 mg ,0.327 mmol) with NMM (130.7 μL , 1.19 mmol) and HATU (instead of TBTU, 135.5mg; 0.356 mmol) in CH₂Cl₂ (2mL) for 2.75 h at RT then worked up as described previously to provide the crude tripeptide 25d as an ivory foam (ca. 211.4 mg ; 100%).
 MS (FAB) 712.5 MH⁺

compound 301:

- d) The crude tripeptide 25d (ca.15.4 mg , 0.022 mmol) was dissolved in absolute ethanol (2 mL) and an estimated amount (tip of spatula) of both 10% Pd/C catalyst and ammonium acetate were added. The mixture was hydrogenated overnight under a hydrogen filled balloon at RT and atmospheric pressure. The reaction mixture was filtered through a 0.45 μm Millex® filter, evaporated to dryness then diluted with EtOAc and 10% aqueous citric acid, and washed again with 10% aqueous citric acid (1x), water (2x) and brine (1x). The organic layer was dried
- 25 (MgSO₄), filtered, evaporated to dryness and lyophilized to provide the tripeptide **301** as a white amorphous solid (11.0 mg; 82%).
 - MS (FAB) 622.5 MH+ 644.5 (M+Na)+
 - ¹H NMR (DMSO), ca.1:4 mixture of rotamers, δ 8.54 & 8.27 (s, 1H),8.06-7.99 (m, 1H), 7.96-7.91 (m, 1H), 7.87 (d, J= 8Hz, 1H), 7.57-7.42 (m, 4H), 6.81 (d, J= 8Hz,
- 30 1H), 4.99 (d, J= 12Hz, 1H), 4.88 (d, J= 12Hz, 1H), 4.46-4.19 (m, 2H), 4.17-4.02 (m, 2H), 3.88-3.67 (m, 1H), 2.28-2.19 (m, 1H), 2.05-1.93 (m, 1H), 1.73-1.43 (m, 8H), 1.32-1.07 (m, 6H), 1.28 (s, 9H), 1.03-0.85 (m, 2H), 0.91 (t, J= 7.5, 15Hz, 3H)

EXAMPLE 26

5

Synthesis of compound 306

26a
$$26b \equiv 15d$$
 $26c$ $26c$

- a) The acid **26a** (180 mg, 0.500 mmol) and the amine **15d** (96 mg, 0.500 mmole) were coupled using TBTU (192 mg, 0.600 mmol) and DIPEA (226 mg, 1.75 mmol) in CH₂Cl₂ (10 mL) for 20 h. The reaction mixture was concentrated, taken up in ethyl acetate, washed twice with sat. NaHCO₃ and once with brine. The organic layer was dried on MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated to give **26c** as a brown oil, used without purification in the next step.
- b, c) The crude compound 26c (ca. 0.500 mmol) was stirred for 30 min in HCl 4N/dioxane (4 mL) and concentrated to dryness. The solid was taken up in CH₂Cl₂ (10 mL) and DIPEA (226 mg, 1.75 mmol) was added followed by Boc-Chg-OH monohydrate (138 mg, 0.500 mmol) and TBTU (192 mg, 0.600 mmol). The solution was stirred at RT for 5 h. The reaction mixture was concentrated, taken up in ethyl acetate, washed twice with sat. NaHCO₃ and once with brine. The organic layer

10

was dried on MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated to give a brown oil, purified by flash chromatography to give **26d** as a yellow oil, 204 mg, 64% over two couplings. ¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ 8.77-8.74 (m, 1 H), 8.14 (d, J = 8 Hz, 1 H), 8.02 (d, J = 9 Hz, 1 H), 7.69 (dd, J = 9, 7 Hz, 1 H), 7.52 (d, J = 5 Hz, 1 H), 7.47 (dd, J = 8, 7 Hz, 1 H), 6.78 (d, J = 5 Hz, 1 H), 5.80-5.70 (m, 1 H), 5.35-5.27 (m, 2 H), 5.14-5.07 (m, 2 H), 4.89-4.83 (m, 1 H), 4.39-4.32 (m, 1 H), 4.30-4.24 (m, 1 H), 4.20-4.07 (m, 2 H), 4.00-3.92 (m, 1 H), 3.04-2.92 (m, 1 H), 2.39-2.29 (m, 1 H), 2.16-2.04 (m, 1 H), 1.91-1.83 (m, 1 H), 1.82-1.62 (m, 7 H), 1.45-1.35 (m, 9 H), 1.27-1.07 (m, 8 H).

d) **26d** (136 mg, 0.214 mmole) was dissolved in THF (4 mL) and MeOH (2 mL). An aqueous solution (2 mL) of LiOH hydrate (72 mg, 1.72 mmol) was added and the reaction mixture was stirred at RT for 20 h. The solution was concentrated and purified by preparative HPLC to give **compound 306** (the less polar isomer) as a white solid (25 mg).

compound 306: MS(FAB) 607.4 (MH+)

¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ 9.16 (d, J = 6 Hz, 1 H), 8.55 (s, 1 H), 8.35 (d, J = 8 Hz, 1 H), 8.12 (d, J = 9 Hz, 1 H), 8.05 (dd, J = 8, 7 Hz, 1 H), 7.76 (dd, J = 8, 7 Hz, 1 H), 7.59 (d, J = 6 Hz, 1 H), 7.02 (d, J = 8 Hz, 1 H), 5.75-5.66 (m, 2 H), 5.19 (d, J = 18 Hz, 1 H), 5.07 (d, J = 10 Hz, 1 H), 4.55 (d, J = 12 Hz, 1 H), 4.43 (dd, J = 10, 8 Hz, 1 H), 4.03 (d, J = 10 Hz, 1 H), 3.87-3.83 (m, 1 H), 2.66-2.59 (m, 1 H), 2.36-2.30 (m, 1 H), 1.98 (dd, J = 18, 9 Hz, 1 H), 1.75-1.56 (m, 8 H), 1.38-1.35 (m, 1 H), 1.25-1.22 (m, 1 H), 1.09 (s, 9 H), 1.12-0.95 (m, 3 H).

EXAMPLE 27

Synthesis of compound 307

WO 00/09543 PCT/CA99/00736

c) A solution of the acid (8) from Example 8 (505 mg, 105 mmol) in 5 mL of dichloromethane was treated with TBTU (376 mg, 1.17 mmol). The HCl salt of the (R,S) vinyl AccaOEt (18) (from Example 18) (279 mg, 1.46 mmol), in 7 mL of dichloromethane containing (0.60 mL, 5.46 mmol) of N-methyl morpholine, was added to the previous solution of the activated ester. The resulting solution was stirred at RT overnight. The solvent was evaporated *in vacuo*. The residue diluted with ethyl acetate, was washed twice with a saturated solution of sodium bicarbonate and once with brine. The organic layer was dried (MgSO₄) filtered and evaporated *in vacuo*. The residue was chromatographed over silica gel (60:40 *v/v*, hexanes-ethyl acetate) to afford 173 mg (27%) of the dipeptide 27c.

5

10

15

d, e) A solution of the dipeptide **27c** (70 mg, 0.114 mmol) in 3 mL of hydrogen chloride 4.0 M solution in 1,4-dioxane was stirred at RT for 1h (a precipitated came out from the reaction after 10 min). The solvent was removed *in vacuo*. The amine hydrochloride salt **27d** (0.114 mmol), diluted in 1.5 mL of acetonitrile, was neutralized by addition of 65 μL (0.591 mmol) of N-methyl morpholine. A solution of

10

15

20

the Boc ChgOH•H₂O (39 mg, 0.142 mmol) in 1.5 mL of acetonitrile was treated with TBTU (46 mg, 0.143 mmol) and then added to the previous solution of the amine. The resulting solution was stirred at RT (for 2 days). The solvent was removed *in vacuo*. The residue, diluted with ethyl acetate, was washed twice with a saturated solution of sodium bicarbonate and once with brine. The organic layer was dried (MgSO₄), filtered and evaporated *in vacuo*. 86 mg (100%) of tripeptide **27e** was obtained. This crude compound was used in the next reaction without further purification.

f) To a solution of tripeptide **27e** (86 mg, 0.114 mmol) in 5 mL of a mixture THF:H₂O (2.5:1) was added lithium hydroxide monohydrate (22 mg, 0.524 mmol). An additional 0.25 mL of MeOH was added in order to get an homogeneous solution. The resulting solution was stirred at RT overnight before the solvent was evaporated *in vacuo*. The residue was partitioned between water and EtOAc. The aqueous layer was acidified with 1M HCl and then extracted twice with ethyl acetate. The desired compound has been found in the ethyl acetate coming from the first basic extraction. This organic layer was dried (MgSO₄), filtered and evaporated *in vacuo* to afford 69 mg of the crude acid, which was purified by preparatory HPLC. The compound was dissolved in MeOH (4 mL) and injected onto an equilibrated Whatman Partisil 10-ODS-3 (2.2 x 50cm) C18 reverse phase column. (λ = 230nm, solvent A = 0.06% TFA/H₂O, solvent B=0.06% TFA/CH₃CN). Purification program: 20% to 70% of solvent B in 60 min. Fractions were analyzed by analytical HPLC. Appropriate fractions were collected and lyophilized to provide 50 mg (60%) of the desired tripeptide **307** as a white amorphous solid.

compound 307: ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) rotamers ~ 2:8 δ 8.86 (d, J = 2.5 Hz, 1H), 8.85 (s, 0.2H), 8.64 (s, 0.8H), 8.49 (dd, J = 9.5, 3 Hz, 0.2H), 8.45 (dd, J = 9.2 Hz, 0.8H), 8.39-8.33 (m, 2H), 8.20 (d, J = 9.5 Hz, 0.2H), 8.18 (d, J = 9.5 Hz, 0.8H), 7.81 (s, 0.2H), 7.78 (s, 0.8H), 7.64-7.56 (m, 3H), 6.87 (d, J = 8 Hz, 0.8H), 6.36 (d, J = 9 Hz, 0.2H), 5.82-5.67 (m, 2H), 5.27-5.17 (m, 1H), 5.09-5.03 (m, 1H), 4.73 (t, J = 8 Hz, 0.2H), 4.55 (dd, J = 10, 7.5 Hz, 0.8H), 4.49-4.40 (m, 1H), 4.00-3.95 (m, 1H), 3.83-3.76 (m, 1H), 2.87-2.80 (m, 0.2H), 2.69-2.62 (m, 0.8H), 2.39-2.26 (m, 1H), 2.08-2.00 (m, 1H), 1.75-1.41 (m, 7H), 1.37 (s, 1.8H), 1.32-1.27 (m, 1H), 1.17-0.82 (m, 5H), 0.94 (s, 7.2H).

EXAMPLE 28

Synthesis of compound 311

compound 310

Compound 311 was prepared using the process described in Example 24 but using the appropriate building blocks.

Compound 310 ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ 8.98 (d, J = 6 Hz, 1 H), 8.52 (s, 1 H), 8.24 (d, J = 9 Hz, 1 H), 8.08 (d, J = 2 Hz, 1 H), 7.63 (d, J = 9 Hz, 1 H), 7.37 (d, J = 6 Hz, 1 H), 6.98 (d, J = 8 Hz, 1 H), 5.75-5.66 (m, 1 H), 5.57 (br s, 1 H), 5.24-5.19 (m, 1 H), 5.08-5.01 (m, 1 H), 4.57-4.40 (m, 2 H), 4.00-3.96 (m, 1 H), 3.82 (dd, J = 9, 8 Hz, 1 H), 2.59-2.54 (m, 1 H), 2.32-2.26 (m, 1 H), 1.99 (dd, J = 17, 9 Hz, 1 H), 1.74-1.55 (m, 8 H), 1.37 (s, 1 H), 1.26-1.22 (m, 1 H), 1.14-1.08 (m, 9 H), 1.02-0.91 (m, 3 H).

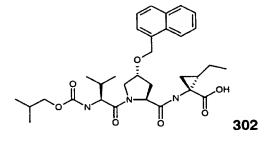
EXAMPLE 29

5

10

20

Synthesis of compound 302



15 Compound 302 was prepared using the process described in Example 27 but using the appropriate building blocks.

 1 H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ 8.34 (s, 1 H), 8.04-8.01 (m, 1 H), 7.94-7.92 (m, 1 H), 7.87 (d, J = 8 Hz, 1 H), 7.54-7.50 (m, 3 H), 7.45 (dd, J = 17, 8 Hz, 1 H), 7.22 (d, J = 8 Hz, 1 H), 4.94 (dd, J = 55, 12 Hz, 2 H), 4.34 (s, 1 H), 4.27 (dd, J = 8, 8 Hz, 1 H), 4.16 (d, J = 11 Hz, 1 H), 4.07 (dd, J = 8, 8 Hz, 1 H), 3.72-3.65 (m, 2 H), 3.59-3.54 (m, 1 H), 2.24-2.18 (m, 1 H), 2.02-1.95 (m, 2 H), 1.75-1.70 (m, 1 H), 1.53-1.44 (m, 2 H), 1.32-1.27

(m, 1 H), 1.21-1.17 (m, 1 H), 0.96-0.85 (m, 10 H), 0.80-0.77 (m, 5 H), 0.62-0.57 (m, 1 H).

EXAMPLE 30

5

10

15

20

Synthesis of compound 308

Compound 308 was prepared using the process described in Example 27 but using the appropriate building blocks.

 1 H NMR (DMSO-d₆) rotamers \cong 2:8 δ 8.77 (s, 0.2H), 8.45 (s, 0.8H), 8.13 (d, J = 8.5 Hz, 0.8H), 8.03 (d, J = 8.5 Hz, 0.2H), 7.89-7.83 (m, 1H), 7.55-7.37 (m, 4H), 7.05-6.59 (m, 1H), 6.95 (d, J = 8 Hz, 0.8H), 6.26 (d, J = 8.5 Hz, 0.2H), 5.81-5.64 (m, 1H), 5.33-5.28 (m, 1H), 5.26-5.15 (m, 1H), 5.08-5.02 (m, 1H), 4.60 (t, J = 7.5 Hz, 0.2H), 4.38-4.27 (m, 1.8H), 4.09-3.91 (m, 1.8H), 3.74 (dd, J = 12.5, 4 Hz, 0.2H), 2.69-2.60 (m, 0.2H), 2.50-2.40 (m, 1H), 2.36-2.28 (m, 0.2H), 2.23-2.14 (m, 0.8H), 2.05-1.97 (m, 0.8H), 1.76-1.44 (m, 7H), 1.37 (s, 1.8H), 1.29 (s, 7.2H), 1.28-1.20 (m, 1H), 1.16-0.88 (m, 5H).

EXAMPLE 31

Synthesis of compound 309

Compound 309 was prepared using the process described in Example 27 but using the appropriate building blocks.

¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) rotamers \cong 2:8 & 8.75 (s, 0.2H), 8.50 (s, 0.8H), 7.89-7.78 (m, 3H), 7.50-7.44 (m, 1H), 7.42-7.32 (m, 2H), 7.17-7.09 (m, 0.8H) 7.08-7.03 (m, 0.2H), 6.79 (d, J = 8.5 Hz, 0.8H), 6.33 (d, J = 9 Hz, 0.2H), 5.81-5.65 (m, 1H), 5.30-5.16 (m, 2H), 5.10-5.02 (m, 1H), 4.56 (t, J = 7.5 Hz, 0.2H), 4.33 (t, J = 8 Hz, 0.8H), 4.10-3.90 (m, 2.8H), 3.74-3.68 (m, 0.2H), 2.45-2.37 (m, 1H), 2.34-2.17 (m, 1H), 2.05-1.97 (m, 1H), 1.76-1.48 (m, 7H), 1.37 (s, 1.8H), 1.23 (s, 7.2H), 1.21-0.88 (m, 6H).

EXAMPLE 32

Synthesis of compound 305

10

15

20

5

Compound 305 was prepared using the process described in Example 27 but using the appropriate building blocks.

¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) rotamers (1:9) δ 8.68 (s, 0.1H), 8.43 (s, 0.9H), 8.04-8.00 (m, 1H), 7.95-7.91 (m, 1H), 7.87 (d, J = 8.5 Hz, 1H), 7.57-7.49 (m, 3H), 7.47-7.42 (m, 1H), 6.82 (d, J = 8.5 Hz, 0.9H), 6.21 (d, J = 8.5 Hz, 0.1H), 5.80-5.64 (m, 1H), 5.21 (dd, J = 17, 2 Hz, 0.1H), 5.18 (dd, J = 17, 2 Hz, 0.9H), 5.06 (dd, J = 10.5, 2 Hz, 1H), 5.02-4.85 (m, 2H), 4.43 (t, J = 7.5 Hz, 0.1H), 4.34 (br s, 1H), 4.23 (t, J = 8.5 Hz, 0.9H), 4.16-4.05 (m, 1.8H), 3.89-3.82 (m, 0.2H), 3.74 (dd, J = 11, 3.5 Hz, 0.9H), 3.53 (dd, J = 12.5, 4 Hz, 0.1H), 2.30-2.21 (m, 1H), 2.02-1.94 (m, 2H), 1.74-1.38 (m, 7H), 1.36 (s, 0.9H), 1.28 (s, 8.1H), 1.25-0.87 (m, 6H).

EXAMPLE 33

Synthesis of compound 303

Compound 303 was prepared using the process described in Example 27 but using the appropriate building blocks.

¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ 8.29 (s, 1 H), 8.04-8.01 (m, 1 H), 7.94-7.92 (m, 1 H), 7.87 (d, J = 8 Hz, 1 H), 7.56-7.52 (m, 3 H), 7.46 (dd, J = 8, 7 Hz, 1 H), 7.19 (d, J = 9 Hz, 1 H), 5.01 (d, J = 12 Hz, 1 H), 4.86 (d, J = 12 Hz, 1 H), 4.34 (br. s, 1 H), 4.24 (t, J = 8 Hz, 1 H), 4.18-4.09 (m, 2 H), 3.74-3.53 (m, 3 H), 2.24-2.18 (m, 1 H), 2.04-1.95 (m, 1 H), 1.74-1.45 (m, 10 H), 1.31-1.13 (m, 4 H), 0.96-0.86 (m, 7 H), 0.79-0.76 (m, 5 H).

10 EXAMPLE 34

5

15

20

Synthesis of compound 403

a) Coupling of P2 with P1

The methyl ester derivative of **7 (34a)** (170 mg , 0.355mmole) was stirred in 50% THF-methanol (4 ml) and aqueous LiOH (1M, 1 ml) at RT for 1h. The solution was concentrated (Rotavap, 30°C) and residue acidified to pH 6 and solution lyophilized. The resulting powder was stirred in dry DMF (3 ml) in the presence of DIEA (0.4 ml) followed by the successive addition of 1,1-aminocyclobutylcarboxylic acid methyl ester hydrochloride (**34b**) (140 mg, 0.845 mmole) and TBTU (134 mg, 0.417 mmole). After stirring for 18 h at RT , the mixture was purified by flash chromatography on

silica gel (230-400 Mesh) using 1:2 ethyl acetate-hexane to afford an orange oil (98 mg, 90% purity by HPLC).

b) Coupling of P1-P2 with P3

- The dipeptide **34b** (97 mg, 90%, 0.155 mmole) was stirred in 4N HCI–dioxane (5 ml) during 1h at RT. The solution was then concentrated to dryness (Rotavap, high vacuum) to afford a beige solid. This material was stirred in dry DMF (2 ml) at RT in the presence of DIEA (0.4 ml) followed by addition of L-Boc-Tbg (80 mg, 0.35 mmole) and TBTU (112 mg, 0.35 mmole). After stirring 2 days at RT, the solution was poured in ethyl acetate to generate the free base using 5% aqueous potassium carbonate. The organic phase was worked up to give a yellow oily residue. The material was purified by flash chromatography on silica gel column (230-400 Mesh) using 1:2 & 3: 1 v/v ethyl acetate: hexane to afford 40 mg of an oil, homogeneous by HPLC.
- The methyl ester (40 mg) was finally saponified in 1N potassium hydroxide (2 ml) in methanol (4 ml) by stirring at RT during 3h. The mixture was concentrated (Rotavap, 30°C) and acidified to pH 4 with 2N hydrochloric acid. This mixture was purified by preparative HPLC on C18 column using a gradient of 0-50% aqueous acetonitrile (0.1% TFA) at 220 nm. The fractions were pooled, concentrated to half volume and lyophilized to afford 403 as a white fluffy solid (10 mg).
 - 1 H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d₆) δ Mixture of rotamers : NH+ (1H, s, 8.6 ppm), CH (3H, m, 8.2 ppm), Ph (5H, broad s, 7.66 & 7.53 ppm), CH (1H, broad, 7.22ppm), NH (1H, d, J= 7.6 Hz, 6.71 ppm), CHO (1H, broad s, 5.76 ppm), CH (2H, m, 4.58-4.49 ppm), CH (1H, m, 4.04 ppm), CH₃O (3H, s, 3.97 ppm), CH (1H, d, 3.86 ppm), CH
- 25 (7H, very broad, 1.8-2.6 ppm), Boc group (9H, s, 1.25 ppm) and t-butyl group (9H, s, 0.97 ppm).

MS. showed M+H + at m/e 675 (100%).

HPLC peak 98% at 18.9 min.

EXAMPLE 35

5

15

Synthesis of compound 333 (Table 3)

A solution of *m*-anisidine (**35a**) (9.15 mL, 81.4 mmoles) and dimethylacetylene-dicarboxylate (**35b**) (10.0 mL, 81.3 mmoles) in 160 mL of methanol is heated under reflux for 2 h. The solvent is removed *in vacuo* and the residue purified by a flash column chromatography (90:10 hexanes-ethyl acetate). Compound **35c** (17.0 g, 79% yield) is obtained as an orange oil.

¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ 9.62 (broad s, 1H), 7.17 (dd, J = 7 and 8.5 Hz, 1H), 6.66 – 6.62 (m, 1H), 6.49-6.45 (m, 2H), 5.38 (s, 1H), 3.77 (s, 3H), 3.74 (s, 3H), 3.71 (s, 3H).

Diphenylether (50 mL) is heated in a sand bath up to an internal temperature of ≈250°. Diester adduct (35c) (7.5 g, 28.3 mmoles), dissolved in 5 mL of diphenyl ether, is added within 2 min to the boiling solvent. The heating is maintained for 5 min and the reaction mixture is then allowed to cool down to room temperature. Rapidly a beige solid precipitated out. The solid is filtered and then triturated with methanol. To yield 4.1 g (62% yield) of the desired compound 35d.

 1 H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ 7.97 (d, J = 9 Hz, 1H), 7.40 (d, J = 2 Hz, 1H), 6.96 (dd, J = 9 and 2Hz, 1H), 6.55 (s, 1H), 3.95 (s, 3H), 3.84 (s, 3H).

A solution of *cis*-4-hydroxy-L-proline derivative (**35e**) (1.71 g, 5.33 mmoles), 4-hydroxyquinoline derivative (**35f**) (1.25 g, 5.36 mmoles) and triphenylphosphine (2.80 g, 10.68 mmoles) in 75 mL of THF is cooled down to 0° for the addition drop to drop (≈ 1h) of DEAD (1.70 mL, 10.80 mmoles). The reaction mixture was then allowed to warm up slowly to room temperature and the stirring was continued overnight. The solvent is removed *in vacuo* and the residue purified by a flash column chromatography (70:30 ehtylacetate-hexanes). Compound **35g** (0.7 g of pure compound **35g**, and 1.8 g of compound **35g** contaminated with ≈50% of triphenylphosphate oxide) is obtained as a white solid.

¹H NMR (CDCl₃) rotamers (4:6) δ 8.04 (d, J = 9 Hz, 1H), 7.54 (d, J = 2.5 Hz, 1H), 7.40-7.32 (m, 6H), 7.23 (dd, J = 9 and 2.5 Hz, 1H), 5.33-5.13 (m, 3H), 4.66 (t, J = 7.5 Hz, 0.4 H), 4.54 (t, J = 8 Hz, 0.6 H), 4.07 (s, 3H), 3.94 (s, 3H), 4.04=3.80 (m, 2H), 2.78-2.65 (m, 1H), 2.47-2.34 (m, 1H), 1.45 (s, 3.6H), 1.37 (s, 5.4H).

15

20

5

10

To proline benzyl ester derivative (35g) (0.70 g, 1.31 mmoles) in solution in a mixture of methanol-ethyl acetate (10 mL-10 mL) is added 100 mg of 10% Pd/C. The resulting suspension is stirred at room temperature under hydrogen atmosphere for 1 ½ h. The catalyst is then filtered on a Millex-HV Millipore (0.45 μm filter unit) and the solvents are evaporated *in vacuo*. Quantitative yield of the desired acid 35h

10

15

20

(0.59 g) is obtained.

 1 H NMR: (CDCl₃) rotamers 70:30 δ 8.06 (d, J = 9.5 Hz, 0.3 H), 8.01 (d, J = 9 Hz, 0.7 H), 7.56 (d, J = 2 Hz, 1H), 7.44 (broad s, 0.7 H), 7.41 (broad s, 0.3 H), 7.24 (dd, J = 9 and 2.5 Hz, 1H), 5.31-5.25 (m, 1H), 4.67 (t, J = 7.5 Hz, 0.7 H), 4.55 (t, J = 7.5 Hz, 0.3 H), 4.08 (s, 3H), 3.95 (s, 3H), 4.04-3.80 (m, 2H), 2.83-2.72 (m, 1H), 2.71-2.47 (m, 1H), 1.46 (s, 9H).

The salt of the amine **35i** (215 mg, 1.21 mmoles) in 7 mL of acetonitrile is treated with 0.95 mL of DIEA (5.45 mmoles). This solution is then added to a solution of acid **35h** (590 mg, 1.32 mmoles) and TBTU (389 mg, 1.21 mmoles) in 5 mL of CH₃CN the resulting solution is stirred at room temperature overnight. The solvent is removed *in vacuo* and the residue is diluted with ethylacetate and washed twice with a saturated solution of sodium bicarbonate once with brine and dried over MgSO₄. The solvent is removed *in vacuo* and the residue is purified by flash column chromatography (75:25 AcOEt-hexanes) to afford 527 mg (70% yield) of the desired dipeptide (**35j**).

 1 H NMR: (CDCl₃) δ 8.01 (d, J = 9 Hz, 1H), 7.55 (d, J = 2.5 Hz, 1H), 7.45 (s, 1H), 7.22 (dd, J = 9 and 2.5 Hz, 1H), 5.81-5.71 (m, 1H), 5.36-5.28 (m, 2H), 5.18-5.12 (m, 1H), 4.61-4.45 (m, 1H), 4.07 (s, 3H), 3.94 (s, 3H), 3.91-3.74 (m, 2H), 3.72 (s, 3H), 2.99-2.84 (m, 1H), 2.49-2.34 (m, 1H), 2.20-2.08 (m, 1H), 1.97-1.84 (m, 1H), 1.58-1.52 (m, 1H), 1.44 (s, 9H).

10

15

The diester **35j** (716 mg, 1.25 mmoles) in solution in a mixture of THF:MeoH (1.5 mL-1.5 mL) is cooled to 0° before being treated with an aqueous solution of NaOH 1M (1.25 mL, 1.25 mmoles). After 1 h of stirring at 0°, 3 drops of glacial acetic acid are added to neutralize the NaOH. The solvents are removed *in vacuo* and the compound is dried on the pump for a few hours.

A solution of the acid **35k** sodium salt (1.25 mmoles) and Et₃N (0.19 mL, 1.36 mmoles) in 8 mL of THF is cooled to 0° and isobutyl chloroformate (0.18 mL, 1.39 mmoles) is added. After 40 min diazomethane (9 mL, 6.30 mmoles) is added and the resulting solution is stirred at 0° for 30 min and at room temperature for 2 h. The solvents are removed *in vacuo*. The residue, diluted with ethyl acetate, is washed twice with a saturated solution of NaHCO₃ once with brine and dried over MgSO₄, the solvent is evaporated under *vacuo* and the residue is purified by flash column chromatography (50:50 Hexanes/AcOEt) to afford 378 mg (52% yield) of the expected diazoketone **35**l.

¹H NMR: (CDCl₃) δ 8.00 (d, J = 9 Hz, 1H), 7.42 (s, 1H), 7.35 (d, J = 2.5 Hz, 1H), 7.20 (dd, J = 9 and 2.5 Hz, 1H), 6.92 (s, 1H), 5.81-5.71 (m, 1H), 5.35-5.28 (m, 3H), 5.17-

5.13 (m, 1H), 4.61-4.40 (m, 1H), 3.97 (s, 3H), 3.96-3.74 (m, 2H), 3.72 (s, 3H), 2.94-2.38 (m, 2H), 2.18-2.06 (m, 1H), 1.98-1.84 (m, 1H), 1.57-1.52 (m, 1H), 1.42 (s, 9H).

To a cooled (0°) solution of the diazoketone **35I** (0.37 g, 0.642 mmoles) in 15 mL of THF is added 0.25 mL of HBr 48%. The resulting yellow solution is stirred at 0° for 1 h. The reaction mixture is partitioned between ethyl acetate and a saturated solution of NaHCO₃. The organic phase is washed one more time with NaHCO₃ and dried with NaSO₄. After evaporation of the solvents *in vacuo*, 0.36 g (90% yield) of the α -bromoketone **35m** is isolated.

10

15

5

The α -bromoketone **35m** (170 mg, 0.271 mmoles) in 10 mL of isopropanol is treated with 1-acetyl-2-thiourea (64 mg, 0.542 mmoles). The resulting solution is heated at 75° for 1 h. The solvent is removed *in vacuo*. The residue is diluted with ethyl acetate and washed twice with a saturated solution of NaHCO₃, once with brine and dried with MgSO₄. Evaporation of the solvent *in vacuo* afforded 182 mg (> 100%) of crude material **35n**.

The dipeptide **35n** (145 mg, 0.223 mmoles) is treated with 3 mL of a 4M solution of HCl in dioxane. The resulting solution is stirred at room temperature for 1 h. The solvents are removed *in vacuo* and the residue is dried over the pump.

The salt of the amine **35o** in 5 mL of CH₃CN is treated with 195 μL (1,12 mmoles) of DIEA. This solution is then added to the solution of the Boc-*tert*-butylglycine (103 mg, 0.446 mmoles) and HATU (186 mg, 0.489 mmoles) in 3 mL of CH₃CN. The reaction mixture is stirred at room temperature overnight. The CH₃CN is evaporated *in vacuo*. The residue diluted with ethyl acetate is washed twice with a saturated solution of NaHCO₃, once with brine and dried with MgSO₄. After removal of the solvent, 274 mg of the crude tripeptide **35p** is obtained (> 100%).

The tripeptide **35p** (56 mg, 0.0733 mmoles), in 4 mL of a 4M solution of HCl in dioxane, is stirred at room temperature for 2 h. The solvent is removed *in vacuo* and the residue dried over the pump.

The salt of the amine obtained is dissolved in 4 mL of CH₂Cl₂ and treated with 0.13 mL of DIEA (0.746 mmoles) followed by 26 mg of triphosgene (0.0876 mmoles). After 3 h incubation, 1,2,2-trimethylpropylamine (20 mg, 0.146 mmoles) is added (synthesized as described in Moss N., Gauthier J., Ferland J.M., Feb. 1995, SynLett. (2), 142-144). The ice bath is removed and the reaction mixture is stirred at room temperature overnight. The CH₂Cl₂ is evaporated *in vacuo*. The residue, diluted with ethyl acetate is washed twice with a saturated solution of NaHCO₃, once with brine and dried with MgSO₄ to afford 60 mg (≈ 100%) of the desired urea 35q.

A solution of methyl ester **35q** (57 mg, 0.0721 mmoles) in a mixture of THF:H₂O (2.5 mL:1mL) is treated with solid LiOH•H₂O (25 mg, 0.595 mmoles) and 1mL of MeOH is added in order to clarify the solution. After stirring for 4 h at room temperature, the reaction is neutralized by addition of a 1M solution of HCl. The solvents are removed *in vacuo* and the residue is purified by a preparative chromatography. The compound dissolved in 2.5 mL of MeOH, is injected into an equilibrated Whatman Partisil 10-ODS-3 (2.2 x 50 cm) C₁₈ reverse phase column. Purification program: Linear Gradient at 20 mL/nm, λ 220 nm, inject at 10% A up to 60% A in 60 min. A:0.06% TFA/CH₃CN; B:0.06%; TFA/H₂O. Fractions were analyzed by analytical HPLC. The product collected was lyophilized to provide 15 mg of compound **333** as an off white solid (27% yield).

¹H NMR: (DMSO-d₆) δ 8.88 (s, 0.2H), 8.84 (d, J=4.5 Hz, 0.2H), 8.68 (d, J = 8.5 Hz, 0. H), 8.56 (s, 0.8H), 8.40-8.13 (m, 1,5H), 7.96 (d, J = 9.0 Hz, 0.2H), 7.72-7.44 (m, 2.4H), 7.35-7.09 (m, 1.2H), 6.98 (d, J = 9 Hz, 0.2H), 6.15 (d, J = 9Hz, 0.2H), 6.06 (d, J = 9Hz, 0.8H), 5.93 (d, J = 9.5 Hz, 0.24H), 5.86 (d, J = 9Hz, 0.8H), 5.79-5.67 (m, 1H), 5.69-5.44 (m, 1H), 5.24-5.14 (m, 1H), 5.09-5.01 (m, 1H), 4.50-4.35 (m, 2H), 4.24 (d, J = 9.0 Hz, 0.2H), 4.20 (d, J = 9.0 Hz, 0.8H), 4.06-3.98 (m, 2H), 3.95 (s, 3H), 3.77-3.60 (m, 2H), 2.58-2.50 (m, 1H), 2.33-2.28 (m, 1H), 2.22 (s, 2.4H), 2.21 (s, 0.6H), 2.02 (q, J – 9Hz, 1H), 1.56-1.38 (m, 1H), 1.28-1.22 (m, 1H), 0.97 (s, 9H), 0.83 (d, J = 6Hz, 3H), 0.72 (s, 9H).

MS(FAB) 778.3 (m + H) $^{+}$, 776.3 (M - H) $^{-}$.

EXAMPLE 36

5

10

15

20

25 Cloning, expression and purification of the recombinant HCV NS3 protease type 1b.

Serum from an HCV-infected patient was obtained through an external collaboration (Bernard Willems MD, Hôpital St-Luc, Montréal, Canada and Dr. Donald Murphy, Laboratoire de Santé Publique du Québec, Ste-Anne de Bellevue, Canada). An engineered full-length cDNA template of the HCV genome was constructed from DNA fragments obtained by reverse transcription-PCR (RT-PCR) of serum RNA and 5 using specific primers selected on the basis of homology between other genotype 1b strains. From the determination of the entire genomic sequence, a genotype 1b was assigned to the HCV isolate according to the classification of Simmonds et al. (J. Clin. Microbiol., (1993), 31, p.1493-1503). The amino acid sequence of the non-10 structural region, NS2-NS4B, was shown to be greater than 93% identical to HCV genotype 1b (BK, JK and 483 isolates) and 88% identical to HCV genotype 1a (HCV-1 isolate). A DNA fragment encoding the polyprotein precursor (NS3/NS4A/NS4B/NS5A/NS5B) was generated by PCR and introduced into eukaryotic expression vectors. After transient transfection, the polyprotein processing mediated by the HCV NS3 protease was demonstrated by the presence 15 of the mature NS3 protein using Western blot analysis. The mature NS3 protein was not observed with expression of a polyprotein precursor containing the mutation S1165A, which inactivates the NS3 protease, confirming the functionality of the HCV NS3 protease.

The DNA fragment encoding the recombinant HCV NS3 protease (amino acid 1027 to 1206) was cloned in the pET11d bacterial expression vector. The NS3 protease expression in *E. coli* BL21(DE3)pLysS was induced by incubation with 1 mM IPTG for 3 h at 22°C. A typical fermentation (18 L) yielded approximately 100 g of wet cell paste. The cells were resuspended in lysis buffer (3.0 mL/g) consisting of 25 mM sodium phosphate, pH 7.5, 10% glycerol (*v/v*), 1 mM EDTA, 0.01% NP-40 and stored at -80°C. Cells were thawed and homogenized following the addition of 5 mM DTT. Magnesium chloride and DNase were then added to the homogenate at final concentrations of 20 mM and 20 μg/mL respectively. After a 25 min incubation at 4°C, the homogenate was sonicated and centrifuged at 15000 x *g* for 30 min at 4°C.
 The pH of the supernatant was then adjusted to 6.5 using a 1M sodium phosphate solution.

An additional gel filtration chromatography step was added to the 2 step purification procedure described in WO 95/22985 (incorporated herein by reference). Briefly,

10

15

25

30

the supernatant from the bacterial extract was loaded on a SP HiTrap column (Pharmacia) previously equilibrated at a flow rate of 2 mL/min in buffer A (50 mM sodium phosphate, pH 6.5, 10% glycerol, 1 mM EDTA, 5 mM DTT, 0.01% NP-40). The column was then washed with buffer A containing 0.15 M NaCl and the protease eluted by applying 10 column volumes of a linear 0.15 to 0.3 M NaCl gradient. NS3 protease-containing fractions were pooled and diluted to a final NaCl concentration of 0.1 M. The enzyme was further purified on a HiTrap Heparin column (Pharmacia) equilibrated in buffer B (25 mM sodium phosphate, pH 7.5, 10% glycerol, 5 mM DTT, 0.01% NP-40). The sample was loaded at a flow rate of 3 mL/min. The column was then washed with buffer B containing 0.15 M NaCl at a flow rate of 1.5 mL/min. Two step washes were performed in the presence of buffer B containing 0.3 or 1M NaCl. The protease was recovered in the 0.3M NaCl wash, diluted 3-fold with buffer B, reapplied on the HiTrap Heparin column and eluted with buffer B containing 0.4 M NaCl. Finally, the NS3 protease-containing fractions were applied on a Superdex 75 HiLoad 16/60 column (Pharmacia) equilibrated in buffer B containing 0.3 M NaCl. The purity of the HCV NS3 protease obtained from the pooled fractions was judged to be greater than 95% by SDS-PAGE followed by densitometry analysis.

The enzyme was stored at -80°C and was thawed on ice and diluted just prior to use.

EXAMPLE 37

20 Recombinant HCV NS3 protease/NS4A cofactor peptide radiometric assay.

The enzyme was cloned, expressed and prepared according to the protocol described in Example 36. The enzyme was stored at -80°C, thawed on ice and diluted just prior to use in the assay buffer containing the NS4A cofactor peptide.

The substrate used for the NS3 protease/ NS4A cofactor peptide radiometric assay, DDIVPC-SMSYTW, is cleaved between the cysteine and the serine residues by the enzyme. The sequence DDIVPC-SMSYTW corresponds to the NS5A/NS5B natural cleavage site in which the cysteine residue in P2 has been substituted for a proline. The peptide substrate DDIVPC-SMSYTW and the tracer biotin-DDIVPC-SMS[125]-Y]TW are incubated with the recombinant NS3 protease and the NS4A peptide cofactor KKGSVVIVGRIILSGRK (molar ratio enzyme: cofactor 1:100) in the absence or presence of inhibitors. The separation of substrate from products is performed by adding avidin-coated agarose beads to the assay mixture followed by filtration. The amount of SMS[125]-Y]TW product found in the filtrate allows for the calculation of the

percentage of substrate conversion and of the percentage of inhibition.

A. Reagents

5

Tris and Tris-HCI (UltraPure) were obtained from Gibco-BRL. Glycerol (UltraPure), MES and BSA were purchased from Sigma. TCEP was obtained from Pierce, DMSO from Aldrich and NaOH from Anachemia.

Assay buffer: 50 mM Tris HCl, pH 7.5, 30% (*w/v*) glycerol, 1 mg/mL BSA, 1 mM TCEP (TCEP added just prior to use from a 1 M stock solution in water).

Substrate: DDIVPCSMSYTW, 25 μ M final concentration (from a 2 mM stock solution in DMSO stored at -20°C to avoid oxidation).

10 Tracer: reduced mono iodinated substrate biotin DDIVPC SMS[¹²⁵I Y]TW (~1 nM, final concentration).

HCV NS3 protease type 1b, 25 nM final concentration (from a stock solution in 50 mM sodium phosphate, pH 7.5, 10% glycerol, 300 mM NaCl, 5 mM DTT, 0.01% NP-40).

NS4A Cofactor peptide: KKGSVVIVGRIILSGRK, 2.5 μM final concentration (from a 2 mM stock solution in DMSO stored at -20°C).

B. Protocol

The assay was performed in a 96-well polystyrene plate from Costar. Each well contained:

20 μL substrate/tracer in assay buffer;

10 μ L \pm inhibitor in 20% DMSO/assay buffer;

10 μL NS3 protease 1b/NS4 cofactor peptide (molar ratio 1:100).

Blank (no inhibitor and no enzyme) and control (no inhibitor) were also prepared on the same assay plate.

The enzymatic reaction was initiated by the addition of the enzyme/NS4A peptide solution and the assay mixture was incubated for 40 min at 23°C under gentle agitation. Ten (10) μ L of 0.5N NaOH were added and 10 μ L 1 M MES, pH 5.8 were added to quench the enzymatic reaction.

Twenty (20) µL of avidin-coated agarose beads (purchased from Pierce) were added

10

25

30

96

in a Millipore MADP N65 filtration plate. The quenched assay mixture was transferred to the filtration plate, and incubated for 60 min at 23°C under gentle agitation.

The plates were filtered using a Millipore MultiScreen Vacuum Manifold Filtration apparatus, and 40 μL of the filtrate was transferred in an opaque 96-well plate containing 60 µL of scintillation fluid per well.

The filtrates were counted on a Packard TopCount instrument using a 1251-liquid protocol for 1 minute.

The % inhibition was calculated with the following equation:

100 - [(counts_{inh}-counts_{blank})/(counts_{cti}-counts_{blank})x 100]

A non-linear curve fit with the Hill model was applied to the inhibition-concentration data, and the 50% effective concentration (IC₅₀) was calculated by the use of SAS software (Statistical Software System; SAS Institute, Inc. Cary, N.C.).

EXAMPLE 38

15 Full-length NS3-NS4A heterodimer protein assay

The NS2-NS5B-3' non coding region was cloned by RT-PCR into the pCR®3 vector (Invitrogen) using RNA extracted from the serum of an HCV genotype 1b infected individual (provided by Dr. Bernard Willems, Hôpital St-Luc, Montréal, Québec, Canada). The NS3-NS4A DNA region was then subcloned by PCR into the pFastBac™ HTa baculovirus expression vector (Gibco/BRL). The vector sequence 20 includes a region encoding a 28-residue N-terminal sequence which contains a hexahistidine tag. The Bac-to-Bac™ baculovirus expression system (Gibco/BRL) was used to produce the recombinant baculovirus. The full length mature NS3 and NS4A heterodimer protein (His-NS3-NS4AFL) was expressed by infecting 10⁶ Sf21 cells/mL with the recombinant baculovirus at a multiplicity of infection of 0.1-0.2 at 27°C. The infected culture was harvested 48 to 64 h later by centrifugation at 4°C. The cell pellet was homogenized in 50mM NaPO4, pH 7.5, 40% glycerol (w/v), 2mM β-mercaptoethanol, in presence of a cocktail of protease inhibitors. His-NS3-NS4AFL was then extracted from the cell lysate with 1.5% NP-40, 0.5% Triton X-100, 0.5M NaCl, and a DNase treatment. After ultracentrifugation, the soluble extract was diluted 4-fold and bound on a Pharmacia Hi-Trap Ni-chelating column. The His-

10

15

30

NS3-NS4AFL was eluted in a >90% pure form (as judged by SDS-PAGE), using a 50 to 400 mM imidazole gradient. The His-NS3-NS4AFL was stored at -80°C in 50 mM sodium phosphate, pH 7.5, 10% (w/v) glycerol, 0.5 M NaCl, 0.25 M imidazole, 0.1% NP-40. It was thawed on ice and diluted just prior to use.

The protease activity of His-NS3-NS4AFL was assayed in 50 mM Tris-HCl, pH 8.0, 0.25 M sodium citrate, 0.01% (w/v) n-dodecyl-β-D-maltoside, 1 mM TCEP. Five (5) μM of the internally quenched substrate anthranilyl-DDIVPAbu[C(O)-O]-AMY(3-NO₂)TW-OH in presence of various concentrations of inhibitor were incubated with 1.5 nM of His-NS3-NS4AFL for 45 min at 23°C. The final DMSO concentration did not exceed 5.25%. The reaction was terminated with the addition of 1M MES, pH 5.8. Fluorescence of the N-terminal product was monitored on a Perkin-Elmer LS-50B fluorometer equipped with a 96-well plate reader (excitation wavelength: 325 nm; emission wavelength: 423 nm).

The % inhibition was calculated with the following equation:

100 - [(counts_{inh}-counts_{blank})/(counts_{ctl}-counts_{blank})x 100]

A non-linear curve fit with the Hill model was applied to the inhibition-concentration data, and the 50% effective concentration (IC_{50}) was calculated by the use of SAS software (Statistical Software System; SAS Institute, Inc. Cary, N.C.).

EXAMPLE 39

20 NS3 Protease Cell-based assay

This assay was done with Huh-7 cells, a human cell line derived from a hepatoma, co-transfected with 2 DNA constructs:

- one expressing a polyprotein comprising the HCV non-structural proteins fused to tTA in the following order: NS3-NS4A-NS4B-NS5A-tTA (called NS3);
- 25 the other expressing the reporter protein, secreted alkaline phosphatase, under the control of tTA (called SEAP).

The polyprotein must be cleaved by the NS3 protease for the mature proteins to be released. Upon release of the mature proteins, it is believed that the viral proteins will form a complex at the membrane of the endoplasmic reticulum while tTA will migrate to the nucleus and transactivate the SEAP gene. Therefore, reduction of NS3 proteolytic activity should lead to reduction of mature tTA levels and

concomitant decrease in SEAP activity.

To control for other effects of the compounds, a parallel transfection was done where a construct expressing tTA alone (called tTA) was co-transfected with the SEAP construct such that SEAP activity is independent of NS3 proteolytic activity.

Protocol of the assay: Huh-7 cells, grown in CHO-SFMII + 10% FCS (fetal calf serum), were co-transfected with either NS3 and SEAP or tTA and SEAP, using the FuGene protocol (Boehringer Mannheim). After 5 h at 37°, the cells were washed, trypsinized and plated (at 80 000 cells/well) in 96-well plates containing a range of concentrations of the compounds to be tested. After a 24-h incubation period, an aliquot of the medium was drawn and the SEAP activity in this aliquot was measured with the Phospha-Light kit (Tropix).

Analysis of the percent inhibition of SEAP activity with respect to compound concentration was performed with the SAS software to obtain the EC₅₀.

The toxicity of the compound (TC₅₀) was then assessed using the MTT assay as follows:

20μL of a MTT solution (5mg/ml medium) was added per well and incubated at 37° for 4 hrs;

the medium was removed and 50 μ l of 0.01N HCl + 10% Triton X-100 was added; after shaking at RT for at least 1 hr, the OD of each well was read at 595 nm wavelength.

The TC₅₀ was calculated in the same way as the EC₅₀.

EXAMPLE 40

20

Specificity assays

The specificity of the compounds was determined against a variety of serine

25 proteases: human leukocyte elastase, porcine pancreatic elastase and bovine
pancreatic α-chymotrypsin and one cysteine protease: human liver cathepsin B. In
all cases a 96-well plate format protocol using a colorimetric p-nitroaniline (pNA)
substrate specific for each enzyme was used. Each assay included a 1 h enzymeinhibitor pre-incubation at 30°C followed by addition of substrate and hydrolysis to

≈30% conversion as measured on a UV Thermomax® microplate reader. Substrate
concentrations were kept as low as possible compared to K_M to reduce substrate

competition. Compound concentrations varied from 300 to 0.06 μM depending on their potency.

The final conditions for each assay were as follows:

- 50mM Tris-HCl pH 8, 0.5 M Na₂SO₄, 50 mM NaCl, 0.1 mM EDTA, 3% DMSO, 0.01% Tween-20 with;
- [100 μM Succ-AAPF-pNA and 250 pM α-chymotrypsin], [133 μM Succ-AAA-pNA and 8 nM porcine elastase], [133 μM Succ-AAV-pNA and 8 nM leukocyte elastase]; or
- [100 mM NaHPO₄ pH 6, 0.1 mM EDTA, 3% DMSO, 1mM TCEP, 0.01% Tween 20, 30 μM Z-FR-pNA and 5 nM cathepsin B (the stock enzyme was activated in buffer containing 20 mM TCEP before use)].

A representative example is summarized below for porcine pancreatic elastase: In a polystyrene flat-bottom 96-well plate were added using a Biomek liquid handler (Beckman):

- 40 μL of assay buffer (50 mM Tris-HCl pH 8, 50 mM NaCl, 0.1 mM EDTA);
 - 20 μL of enzyme solution (50 mM Tris-HCl pH 8, 50 mM NaCl, 0.1 mM EDTA, 0.02% Tween-20, 40 nM porcine pancreatic elastase); and
 - 20 μL of inhibitor solution (50 mM Tris-HCl, pH 8, 50 mM NaCl, 0.1 mM EDTA,
 0.02% Tween-20, 1.5 mM-0.3 μM inhibitor, 15% v/v DMSO).
- After 60 min pre-incubation at 30°C, 20 μL of substrate solution (50 mM Tris-HCl, pH 8, 0.5 M Na₂SO₄, 50 mM NaCl, 0.1 mM EDTA, 665 μM Succ-AAA-pNA) were added to each well and the reaction was further incubated at 30°C for 60 min after which time the absorbance was read on the UV Thermomax® plate reader. Rows of wells were allocated for controls (no inhibitor) and for blanks (no inhibitor and no enzyme).
- The sequential 2-fold dilutions of the inhibitor solution were performed on a separate plate by the liquid handler using 50 mM Tris-HCl pH 8, 50 mM NaCl, 0.1 mM EDTA, 0.02% Tween-20, 15% DMSO. All other specificity assays were performed in a similar fashion.

The percentage of inhibition was calculated using the formula:

WO 00/09543 PCT/CA99/00736

100

 $[1-((UV_{inh}-UV_{blank})/(UV_{ctl}-UV_{blank}))] \times 100$

A non-linear curve fit with the Hill model was applied to the inhibition-concentration data, and the 50% effective concentration (IC₅₀) was calculated by the use of SAS software (Statistical Software System; SAS Institute, Inc., Cary, N.C.).

5

10

15

20

25

TABLES OF COMPOUNDS

The following tables list compounds representative of the invention. Compounds of the invention were assayed either in one or both of the assays of Examples 37 and 38 and were found to be active with IC₅₀ below 50μ M (\boldsymbol{A}); below 5μ M (\boldsymbol{B}) or below 0.5μ M (\boldsymbol{C}).

Activity in cells and specificity:

Representative compounds of the invention were also tested in the surrogate cell-based assay of Example 39, and in one or several assays of Example 40. For example, compound 601 from Table 6 was found to have an IC $_{50}$ of 50 nM in the assay of Example 37 and 30nM in the assay of Example 38. The EC $_{50}$ as determined by the assay of Example 39 is 8.2 μ M. In the specificity assays of Example 40, the same compound was found to have the following activity: HLE >75 μ M; PPE >75 μ M; α -Chym. >75 μ M; Cat. B >75 μ M. These results indicate that this family of compounds is highly specific for the NS3 protease and at least certain members of this family are active in a surrogate cell-based assay.

The following abbreviations are used within the present tables:

MS: Mass spectrometric data; Ac: acetyl; Bn: benzyl; Boc: *tert*-butyloxycarbonyl; cHex: cyclohexyl; Chg: cyclohexylglycine (2-amino-2-cyclohexyl-acetic acid); iPr: isopropyl; O-Bn: benzyloxy; Ph: phenyl: *t-Bu: tert-butyl*; Tbg: *tert-butylglycine*; 1- or 2-Np: 1- or 2-naphthyl; 1- or 2-NpCH₂O: 1, or 2-naphthylmethoxy.

101

TABLE 1

Tab 1 Cpd#	B	R ₃	R ₂	MS	activity range
101	Вос	cHex	-O-CH ₂ -1-naphthyl	594	A
102		cHex	-O-CH₂-1-naphthyl	632	A :
103		cHex	-O-CH₂-1-naphthyl	642	A .
104		cHex	-O-CH₂-1-naphthyl	728	A
105	NH H	cHex	-O-CH₂-1-naphthyl	619	A :
106	Вос	cHex	NO ₂	702	В
107	CICICI	сНех	-O-CH ₂ -1-naphthyl	720 M+Na⁺	A
108	Boc	iPr	N _{NO₂}	662	A .

Tab 1 Cpd#	B	R ₃	R ₂	MS	activity range
109	acetyl	cHex		644 NO ₂	A
110	Вос	i-Pr	N CI	575.1	A
111	Вос	<i>t-</i> Bu		661.3	С

TABLE 2

Table 2 Cpd #	В	R₃	R ₂	R ₁ anti to carboxy	MS	Activity range
201	Boc	cyclohexyl	-O-CH ₂ -1-naphthyl	ethyl (one isomer)	622	A
202	Boc	cyclohexyl	-O-CH ₂ -1-naphthyl	ethyl (other isomer)	622	A
203	Boc	<i>t</i> -Bu		vinyl 1 <i>R, 2R</i>	687.5	C

103

TABLE 3

Table 3 Cpd #	В	R ₃	R ₂	R ₁ syn to carboxyl	MS	Activ. Range
301	Вос	cHex	-O-CH₂-1-naphthyl	ethyl	622	A .
302	>>° —	iPr	-O-CH₂-1-naphthyl	ethyl	582	A
303	>>° !	cHex	-O-CH ₂ -1-naphthyl	ethyl	622	A .
304	Boc	cHex	OCH ₂	ethyl	623	A
305	Вос	сНех	-O-CH₂-1-naphthyl	vinyl	620	В
306	Вос	сНех		vinyl	607	. B
307	Вос	cHex	NO ₂	vinyl	728	C
308	Вос	cHex		vinyl	606	В
309	Вос	cHex		vinyl	606	B
310	Boc	cHex	100	vinyl	607	B

Table 3 Cpd #	В	R ₃	R ₂	R ₁ syn to carboxyl	MS	Activ. Range
311	Boc	сНех	CI	vinyl	641	В
312	Вос	cHex		vinyl	607	A
313	Вос	cHex		vinyl	621	B
314	Вос	cHex	N N	vinyl	683	C
315	Вос	сНех	NH ₂	vinyl	698	В
316	Acetyl	сНех		vinyl	625	B
317	Boc	cHex		vinyl	740	C
318	CF₃-C(O)-	i-Pr		vinyl	639.3	В

Table 3 Cpd #	В В	R ₃	R ₂	R ₁ syn to carboxyl	MS	Activ. Range
319		cHex	N	vinyl	732.3	<i>C</i>
320	но	cHex		vinyl	704.3	В
321	Вос	t-Bu	N N N N N N N N N N N N N N N N N N N	vinyl	658.7	С
322	, Boc	<i>t</i> -Bu	CF ₃	vinyl	717.6	В
323	Вос	<i>t-</i> Bu	N N N N N N N N N N N N N N N N N N N		672.4	В
324	Вос	<i>t</i> -Bu		vinyl	727.5	C
325	Вос	<i>t-</i> Bu	OMe		701.4	C
326	Вос	t-Bu	N_N_N_N_O	vinyl	708.3	C

Table 3 Cpd #	B .	R ₃	R ₂	R ₁ syn to carboxyl	MS	Activ. Range
327	→ N	t-Bu	OMe	vinyl	610.3	C
328	Вос	<i>t</i> -Bu	CI	vinyl	615.3	B .
329	Вос	₽-Bu		vinyl	685.3	C
330	Boc	t-Bu		vinyl	627.5	A
331	→ _N	<i>t</i> -Bu	N	vinyl	656.5	C
332	Вос	<i>t-</i> Bu	OMe	ethyl	689.3	С
333	\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\	<i>t</i> -Bu	S N OME	vinyl	778.3	C :

Table 3 Cpd #	В	R ₃	R_2	R ₁ syn to carboxyl	MS	Activ. Range
334		t-Bu	N N OME	vinyl	764.4	С

TABLE 4

Table 4 Cpd #	В	R ₃	R₂	R ₁	MS	activ. range
401	Вос	<i>i</i> -Pr	CI	H	589.1	A
402	Вос	<i>t</i> -Bu		H	603.6	A
403	Boc	<i>t</i> -Bu	OMe	н	675.4	C
404	Boc	<i>t</i> -Bu	OMe	3-(=CH ₂)	687.1	В
405	Вос	t-Bu	OMe	2-vinyl	702.3	<i>C</i>
406	Вос	t-Bu	OMe	2-Et	703.3	C

109

TABLE 5

Table 5 Cpd #	R ₃	MS	Activity range
501	t-Bu	581.3	C
502	Н	539.2	A
503	*	625.3	8
504	97,	582.6	B
505		583.2	В
506		659.2	В
507		670.2	В
508	S V	703.3	B

Table 5 Cpd #	R ₃	MS	Activity range
509	<u></u>	581.3	C
510	\ \	581.2	C
511	ОН	637.2	В

111

TABLE 6

Table 6 Cpd #	R ₃	R _{21A}	R _{21B}	MS	Activity range
601	<i>i</i> -Pr	Ph	7-OMe	673.3	C
602	t-Bu	Ph	8-OMe, 7-OMe	717.2	C
603	i-Pr	Ph	7-ethyl	671.2	C
604	t-Bu		7-OMe	611.2	C
605	t-Bu	Ph	7-0- <i>i</i> Pr	715.3	C
606	<i>t</i> -Bu		7-CI	615.2	C .
607	<i>i</i> Pr	···· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	7-Ci	601.2	C
608	CH ₂ - <i>i</i> Pr		7-CI	615.3	B
609	<i>t</i> -Bu	O N		680.2	В
610	<i>t</i> -Bu	CI		613.3	C
611	<i>t</i> -Bu	Ph	7-N(Me) ₂	700.5	C
612	<i>t</i> -Bu			666.4	C
613	<i>t</i> -Bu			650.4	В
614	<i>t</i> -Bu	○ N		664.5	B
615	<i>t</i> -Bu		7-N(Me) ₂	624.5	c

Table 6 Cpd #	R ₃	R _{21A}	R _{21B}	MS	Activity range
616	<i>t</i> -Bu	H ₂ N N	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	678.4 (M-H) ⁺	C
617	t-Bu	N-		664.5	<i>C</i>
618	<i>t</i> -Bu	Me I Me—N		638.5	B
619	<i>t</i> -Bu	Ph I Me—N		700.5	В
620	<i>t</i> -Bu	Me_N	••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••	679.5	С
621	<i>t</i> -Bu	Me N	 	678.3	C
622	<i>t</i> -Bu	Me	 	625.4	C
623	<i>t</i> -Bu	MeO-		611.3	C
624	<i>t</i> -Bu	(Me)₂N-	 	624.4	В
625	<i>t</i> -Bu	Ph .	7-S(Me)	703.4	C
626	<i>t</i> -Bu	Ph	7-Br	737.3	C
627	<i>t</i> -Bu	Ph	7-F	675.3	C
628	<i>t</i> -Bu	HN N	7-N(Me) ₂	764.2	C
629	t-Bu	2 2 2	7-N(Me) ₂	764.3	<i>C</i>
630	t-Bu	N N N N N N N N N N N N N N N N N N N	7-N(Et) ₂	792.3	. .

113

TABLE 7

Table 7 Cpd #	R ₃	R _{21A}	MS	Activity range
701	<i>t</i> -Bu	Me-N	691.3	C
702	<i>t</i> -Bu	Ph	713.4	<i>C</i>
703	<i>t</i> -Bu	Me	655.3	C
704	<i>t</i> -Bu		728.4	C
705	<i>t</i> -Bu	O N	696.4	<i>c</i>
706	<i>t</i> -Bu	s s	693.3	C
707	<i>t</i> -Bu	S	694.3	C
708	<i>t</i> -Bu	Ph-N(Me)-	716.4	c
709	<i>t</i> -Bu	H ₂ N N	709.2	C
710	t-Bu	HOOC-	655.3	В
711	<i>t</i> -Bu	Me S	708.2	C
712	<i>t</i> -Bu	(Me)₂N-	654.3	C
117 AND MINO A				4. 11.9

Table 7 Cpd #	R ₃	R _{21A}	MS	Activity range
713	<i>t</i> -Bu	s N	692.3 (M-H)	C
714	<i>t</i> -Bu	Et N	722.3	C
715	<i>t</i> -Bu	N	688.3	C
716	<i>t</i> -Bu	N	688.3	. C
717	<i>t</i> -Bu	Me HN S	723.3	C
718	<i>t</i> -Bu	NH ₂	626.3	C
719	<i>t</i> -Bu	The same of the sa	751.2	<i>C</i>
720	t-Bu	N N	733.4	C
721	<i>t</i> -Bu		724.1	C
722	t-Bu	HN	737.3	C
723	<i>t</i> -Bu	HN	751.4	С
724	<i>t</i> -Bu	N.	708.4	C

Table 7 Cpd #			MS	Activity
725	t-Bu	N N	689.4	range C
726	<i>t</i> -Bu	<i>i-</i> Pr	653.3	<i>C</i>
727	<i>t</i> -Bu		688.3	C
728	<i>t</i> -Bu	O.S. O.S. O.S. O.S. O.S. O.S. O.S. O.S.	786.1	C
729	<i>t</i> -Bu		689.3	C
730	<i>t</i> -Bu	1	669.2	C
731	<i>t</i> -Bu		669.2	<i>C</i>
732	<i>t</i> -Bu	N S S	791.0	<i>c</i>
733	<i>t</i> -Bu	N N N	765.3	C
734	t-Bu	S	671.3	C
735	<i>t</i> -Bu		683.3	C
736	<i>t</i> -Bu	<i>t</i> -Bu	667.4	C
737	<i>t</i> -Bu	CHex	693.4	C

WO 00/09543 PCT/CA99/00736

116

TABLE 8

Table 8 Cpd #	B	R ₃	R ₂₂	MS	activity range
801	→ N	<i>t</i> -Bu		686.7	C .
802	но	<i>t</i> -Bu		727.7	C
803		<i>t</i> -Bu		685.7	C
804		t-Bu		711.7	С
805	Ac	<i>t</i> -Bu		629.6	C
806		t-Bu		725.7	C
807	_N\rightarrow\righta	<i>t</i> -Bu	***	672.4	C
808	O _N	<i>t</i> -Bu	 · ·	712.4	<i>C</i>

_	-	_
1	1	7
	- 5	•

Table 8 Cpd #	В	R ₃	R ₂₂	MS	activity range
809		<i>i</i> -Pr		649.3	C
810		<i>t</i> -Bu		749.3	C
811	Вос	<i>t</i> -Bu	4-CI	721.3	C
812	ON	<i>t</i> -Bu		706.2	C
813	N S	<i>t</i> -Bu		702.2	C
814	Вос	<i>t</i> -Bu	2-CI	721.3	C
815	Вос	<i>t</i> -Bu	3-CI	721.3	C
816	N	<i>t</i> -Bu		658.3	C
817		<i>t</i> -Bu	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	720.2	C
818	S	t-Bu		728.3	C
819	O ₂ N CF ₃	<i>i</i> -Pr		762.3	C
820	CF ₃	<i>i</i> -Pr		732.2	C
821	OMe	<i>i</i> -Pr		679.1	C
822	Me	<i>i</i> -Pr	· · · · ·	663.3	C :
823	Вос	t-Bu	2-OMe	717.2	<i>C</i>
824	Вос	<i>t</i> -Bu	3-OMe	719.2	C
825	Вос	<i>t</i> -Bu	4-OMe	719.2	C
	**			-	

Table 8 Cpd #	В	R ₃	R ₂₂	MS	activity range
826		<i>i</i> -Pr	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	663.3	B
827	Me O III	<i>t</i> -Bu		673.2	C
828	Me	<i>i</i> -Pr	••	691.3	C
829	Me O N	<i>t</i> -Bu	••	734.3	C
830		<i>t</i> -Bu		645.3	C
831	H ₂ N N	<i>t</i> -Bu		701.3	С
832	H ₂ N N	<i>t</i> -Bu	· 44 1401	801.3	C
833	H ₂ N Me N	<i>t</i> -Bu		715.2	С
834	Me	<i>i</i> -Pr		663.3	c
835	HO Me N	<i>t</i> -Bu	 	702.5	C
836	O ₂ N	<i>i</i> -Pr		694.4	Ċ
837	CI	<i>i</i> -Pr	, 	683.3	C
838	но	<i>i</i> -Pr		679.1	<i>C</i>

		119			
Table 8 Cpd #	B	R ₃	R ₂₂	MS	activity range
839	NC	<i>i</i> -Pr		674.5	C
840	F	<i>i</i> -Pr		667.4	C
841	Вос	<i>t</i> -Bu	2-Me	701.5	C
842	Вос	<i>t</i> -Bu	3-Me	701.5	С
843	Вос	<i>t</i> -Bu	4-Me	701.5	C
844	N N N N N N N N N N N N N N N N N N N	<i>t</i> -Bu	4-OMe	716.6	C
845	The	<i>i</i> -Pr		706.9	С
846		<i>i</i> -Pr		693.4	С
847	Вос	cHex		713.4	C
848	Вос		"	687.5	C
849	Вос		·	701.5	С
850	Вос			731.5	C
851	Boc	\		689.5	C
852	Вос			689.5	C
	•		•		

Table 8 Cpd #	В	R ₃	R ₂₂	MS	activity range
853	Boc		<u></u>	765.5	C
854		<i>i</i> -Pr		723.4 (M-H) ⁺	C
855	но	<i>i</i> -Pr		693.3	C
856	NC	<i>i</i> -Pr		688.3	<i>C</i>
857	MeO N	<i>t</i> -Bu		716.4	C
858	N-Me	<i>t</i> -Bu	•••	700.4	C ,
859		<i>i</i> -Pr		655.4	B
860		<i>i-</i> Pr		759.3	C
861	NC NC	<i>i</i> -Pr		688.3	C
862		<i>i</i> -Pr	- -	685.3	C
863		<i>i</i> -Pr		699.4	C
864	F	<i>i</i> -Pr		667.3	C
865	گ ا	<i>t</i> -Bu		701.4	c :

Table 8 Cpd # 866	H ₂ N	R ₃	R ₂₂	MS 702.4	activity range C
867		<i>t</i> -Bu		701.3	C
868		<i>t</i> -Bu		713.3	C
869	Q.i.	<i>t</i> -Bu		699.4	C
870	V _N ↓	<i>t</i> -Bu		700.4	C
871	J _N L	<i>t</i> -Bu		714.3	C .
872	→ N	<i>t</i> -Bu		714.4	C
873	N N	<i>t</i> -Bu		714.3	C

122

TABLE 9

Table 9 Cpd #	В	MS	Activity range
901	Boc	685.3	C
902		825.4	<i>C</i>
903	но	769.3	,
904	HO	707.3	<i>c</i>
905	J.	685.2	C
906	N O	728.2	C
907	s o	717.2	C

Table 9 Cpd #	B	MS	Activity range
908		691.2	C
909	0 % S	727.2	C
910		715.3	C
911	но	721.3	C
912	S	733.2	C
913	S O	713.3	C
914		805.3	
915	S	692.2	C
916		680.3	<i>C</i>

WO 00/09543 PCT/CA99/00736

124

TABLE 10

Table 10 Cpd #	B-X-	R ₃	Z	R _{21B}	MS	activity range
1001	Ph-N(Me)-	<i>i</i> -Pr	0	Н	663.3	C
1002	Boc-NH-	<i>t</i> -Bu	S	ОМе	703.4	C
1003	(N) Me	<i>i</i> Pr	0		663.3	C

CLAIMS

WHAT IS CLAIMED IS:

1. A compound of formula (I) comprising the scope of the invention are racemates, diastereoisomers and optical isomers of

wherein **B** is H, a C_6 or C_{10} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl; Het or (lower alkyl)-Het, all of which optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl; C_{1-6} alkoxy; C_{1-6} alkanoyl; hydroxy; hydroxyalkyl; halo; haloalkyl; nitro; cyano; cyanoalkyl; amino optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl; amido; or (lower alkyl)amide;

or **B** is an acyl derivative of formula R_4 -C(O)-; a carboxyl of formula R_4 -O-C(O)-; an amide of formula R_4 -N(R_5)-C(O)-; a thioamide of formula R_4 -N(R_5)-C(S)-; or a sulfonyl of formula R_4 -SO₂ wherein

 $\mathbf{R_4}$ is (i) $\mathbf{C_{1-10}}$ alkyl optionally substituted with carboxyl, $\mathbf{C_{1-6}}$ alkanoyl, hydroxy, $\mathbf{C_{1-6}}$ alkoxy, amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with $\mathbf{C_{1-6}}$ alkyl, amido, or (lower alkyl) amide;

- (ii) C_{3-7} cycloalkyl, C_{3-7} cycloalkoxy, or C_{4-10} alkylcycloalkyl, all optionally substituted with hydroxy, carboxyl, (C_{1-6} alkoxy)carbonyl, amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, amido, or (lower alkyl) amide;
- (iii) amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl; amido; or (lower alkyl)amide;
- (iv) C_6 or C_{10} aryl or C_{7-16} aralkyl, all optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, hydroxy, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, or amino optionally mono- or disubstituted with C_{1-6} alkyl; or
- (v) Het or (lower alkyl)-Het, both optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, hydroxy, amido, (lower alkyl) amide, or amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl;

R₅ is H or C_{1.6} alkyl;

with the proviso that when \mathbf{R}_4 is an amide or a thioamide, \mathbf{R}_4 is not (ii) a cycloalkoxy; Y is H or C_{1-6} alkyl;

 \mathbf{R}^3 is C_{1-8} alkyl, C_{3-7} cycloalkyl, or C_{4-10} alkylcycloalkyl, all optionally substituted with hydroxy, C_{1-6} alkoxy, C_{1-6} thioalkyl, amido, (lower alkyl)amido, C_6 or C_{10} aryl, or C_{7-16} aralkyl;

 R_2 is CH_2 - R_{20} , NH- R_{20} , O- R_{20} or S- R_{20} , wherein R_{20} is a saturated or unsaturated C_{3-7} cycloalkyl or C_{4-10} (alkylcycloalkyl), all of which being optionally mono-, di- or trisubstituted with R_{21} ,

or R_{20} is a C_6 or C_{10} aryl or C_{7-14} aralkyl, all optionally mono-, di- or tri-substituted with R_{21} ,

or R_{20} is Het or (lower alkyl)-Het, both optionally mono-, di- or tri-substituted with R_{21} ,

wherein each R_{21} is independently C_{1-6} alkyl; C_{1-6} alkoxy; lower thioalkyl; sulfonyl; NO_2 ; OH; SH; halo; haloalkyl; amino optionally mono- or disubstituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, C_6 or C_{10} aryl, C_{7-14} aralkyl, Het or (lower alkyl)-Het; amido optionally mono-substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, C_6 or C_{10} aryl, C_{7-14} aralkyl, Het or (lower alkyl)-Het; carboxyl; carboxy(lower alkyl); C_6 or C_{10} aryl, C_{7-14} aralkyl or Het, said aryl, aralkyl or Het being optionally substituted with R_{22} ;

wherein R_{22} is C_{1-6} alkyl; C_{3-7} cycloalkyl; C_{1-6} alkoxy; amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl; sulfonyl; (lower alkyl)sulfonyl; NO_2 ; OH; SH; halo; haloalkyl; carboxyl; amide; (lower alkyl)amide; or Het optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl;

 \mathbf{R}^1 is H; C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{3-7} cycloalkyl, C_{2-6} alkenyl, or C_{2-6} alkynyl, all optionally substituted with halogen;

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or ester thereof.

2. A compound of formula I according to claim 1, wherein

B is a C_6 or C_{10} aryl or C_{7-16} aralkyl, all optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{1-6} alkoxy, C_{1-6} alkanoyl, hydroxy, hydroxyalkyl, halo, haloalkyl, nitro, cyano, cyanoalkyl, amido, (lower alkyl)amido, or amino optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl; or

B is Het or (lower alkyl)-Het, all optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, C₁₋₆ alkoxy, C₁₋₆ alkanoyl, hydroxy, hydroxyalkyl, halo, haloalkyl, nitro, cyano, cyanoalkyl, amido, (lower alkyl)amido, or amino optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl.

- 3. A compound of formula I according to claim 1, wherein B is R_4 -SO₂ wherein R_4 is C_1 -6 alkyl; amido; (lower alkyl)amide; C_6 or C_{10} aryl, C_{7-14} aralkyl or Het, all optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl.
- 4. A compound of formula I according to claim 1, wherein B is an acyl derivative of formula R₄-C(O)- wherein R₄ is
 - (i) C_{1-10} alkyl optionally substituted with carboxyl, hydroxy or C_{1-6} alkoxy, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, or amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl;
 - (ii) C_{3-7} cycloalkyl or C_{4-10} alkylcycloalkyl, both optionally substituted with hydroxy, carboxyl, (C_{1-6} alkoxy)carbonyl, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, or amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl;
 - (iv) C_6 or C_{10} aryl or C_{7-16} aralkyl, all optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, hydroxy, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, or amino optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl;
 - (v) Het or (lower alkyl)-Het, both optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, hydroxy, amino optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, or amino optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl.
- 5. A compound of formula I according to claim 1, wherein B is a carboxyl of formula R₄-O-C(O)-, wherein R₄ is
 - (i) C_{1-10} alkyl optionally substituted with carboxyl, C_{1-6} alkanoyl, hydroxy, C_{1-6} alkoxy, amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, amido or (lower alkyl)amide;
 - (ii) C_{3-7} cycloalkyl, C_{4-10} alkylcycloalkyl, all optionally substituted with carboxyl, $(C_{1-6}$ alkoxy)carbonyl, amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, amido or (lower alkyl)amide;
 - (iv) C_6 or C_{10} aryl or C_{7-16} aralkyl optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, hydroxy, amido, (lower alkyl)amido, or amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl; or
 - (v) Het or (lower alkyl)-Het, both optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, hydroxy, amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, amido or (lower alkyl)amido.
- 6. A compound of formula I according to claim 1, wherein B is an amide of formula R₄-N(R₅)-C(O)- wherein R₄ is

- (i) C_{1-10} alkyl optionally substituted with carboxyl, C_{1-6} alkanoyl, hydroxy, C_{1-6} alkoxy, amido, (lower alkyl)amido, or amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl;
- (ii) C_{3-7} cycloalkyl or C_{4-10} alkylcycloalkyl, all optionally substituted with carboxyl, (C_{1-6} alkoxy)carbonyl, amido, (lower alkyl)amido, or amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl;
- (iii) amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₃ alkyl;
- (iv) C_6 or C_{10} aryl or C_{7-16} aralkyl, all optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, hydroxy, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, or amino optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl; or
- (v) Het or (lower alkyl)-Het, both optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, hydroxy, amino optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, amido or (lower alkyl)amide; and \mathbf{R}_5 is H or methyl.
- 7. A compound of formula I according to claim 1, wherein B is a thioamide of formula R₄-NH-C(S)-; wherein R₄ is
 - (i) C_{1-10} alkyl optionally substituted with carboxyl, C_{1-6} alkanoyl or C_{1-6} alkoxy;
 - (ii) C_{3-7} cycloalkyl or C_{4-10} alkylcycloalkyl, all optionally substituted with carboxyl, (C_{1-6} alkoxy)carbonyl, amino or amido.
- 8. A compound of formula I according to claim 2, wherein **B** is a C₆ or C₁₀ aryl optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, C₁₋₆ alkoxy, C₁₋₆ alkanoyl, hydroxy, hydroxyalkyl, halo, haloalkyl, nitro, cyano, cyanoalkyl, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, or amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl.
- 9. A compound of formula I according to claim 2, wherein r B is Het optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, C₁₋₆ alkoxy, C₁₋₆ alkanoyl, hydroxy, halo, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, or amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl.
- A compound of formula I according to claim 4, wherein B is an acyl derivative of formula R₄-C(O)- wherein R₄ is
 - (i) C₁₋₁₀ alkyl optionally substituted with carboxyl, hydroxy or C₁₋₆ alkoxy; or
 - (ii) C_{3-7} cycloalkyl or C_{4-10} alkylcycloalkyl, both optionally substituted with hydroxy, carboxyl, (C_{1-6} alkoxy)carbonyl, or
 - (iv) C_6 or C_{10} aryl or C_{7-16} aralkyl, all optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, hydroxy, or (v) Het optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, hydroxy, amido or

amino.

- 11. A compound of formula I according to claim 5, wherein B is a carboxyl of formula R₄-O-C(O)-, wherein R₄ is
 - (i) C_{1-10} alkyl optionally substituted with carboxyl, C_{1-6} alkanoyl, hydroxy, C_{1-6} alkoxy or amido, (lower alkyl)amide, amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl;
 - (ii) C_{3-7} cycloalkyl, C_{4-10} alkylcycloalkyl, all optionally substituted with carboxyl, $(C_{1-6}$ alkoxy)carbonyl, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, or
 - (iv) C_6 or C_{10} aryl or C_{7-16} aralkyl, all optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, hydroxy, amino optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl; or
 - (v) Het or (lower alkyl)-Het, both optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, hydroxy, amido, or amino optionally mono-substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl.
- 12. A compound of formula I according to claim 6, wherein B is an amide of formula R₄-N(R₅)-C(O)- wherein R₄ is
 - (i) C_{1-10} alkyl optionally substituted with carboxyl, C_{1-6} alkanoyl, hydroxy, C_{1-6} alkoxy, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl;
 - (ii) C_{3-7} cycloalkyl or C_{4-10} alkylcycloalkyl, all optionally substituted with carboxyl, (C_{1-6} alkoxy)carbonyl, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl;
 - (iii) amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₃ alkyl, or
 - (iv) C_6 or C_{10} aryl or C_{7-16} aralkyl, all optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, hydroxy, amino or amido optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl; or
 - (v) Het optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, hydroxy, amino or amido,

and R₅ is H.

- 13. A compound of formula I according to claim 7, wherein B is a thioamide of formula R₄-NH-C(S)-; wherein R₄ is (i) C₁₋₁₀ alkyl; or (ii) C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl.
- 14. A compound of formula I according to claim 12, wherein B is an amide of formula R₄-NH-C(O)- wherein R₄ is
 - (i) C_{1-10} alkyl optionally substituted with carboxyl, C_{1-6} alkanoyl, hydroxy, C_{1-6} alkoxy amido, (lower alkyl)amide, amino optionally mono- or di-substituted

with C₁₋₆ alkyl;

- (ii) C_{3-7} cycloalkyl or C_{4-10} alkylcycloalkyl, all optionally substituted with carboxyl, (C_{1-6} alkoxy)carbonyl, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl;
- (iv) C_6 or C_{10} aryl or C_{7-16} aralkyl optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, hydroxy, amino or amido.
- 15. A compound of formula I according to claim 1, wherein B is

tert-butoxycarbonyl (Boc) or

- 16. A compound of formula I according to claim 1, wherein Y is H or methyl.
- 17. A compound of formula I according to claim 16, wherein Y is H.
- 18. A compound of formula I according to claim 1, wherein R³ is C₁₋₈ alkyl, C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl, or C₄₋₁₀ alkylcycloalkyl, all optionally substituted with hydroxy, C₁₋₆ alkoxy, C₁₋₆ thioalkyl, acetamido, C₆ or C₁₀ aryl, or C₇₋₁₆ aralkyl,.
- **19.** A compound of formula I according to claim 18, wherein **R**³ is the side chain of *tert*-butylglycine (Tbg), Ile, Val, Chg or:

- 20. A compound of formula I according to claim 19, wherein R³ is the side chain of Tbg, Chg or Val.
- 21. A compound of formula I according to claim 1, wherein R_2 is S- R_{20} or O- R_{20} wherein R_{20} is a C_6 or C_{10} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, Het or -CH₂-Het, all optionally mono-, di- or trisubstituted with R_{21} , wherein

 R_{21} is C_{1-6} alkyl; C_{1-6} alkoxy; lower thioalkyl; amino or amido optionally monoor di-substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, C_6 or C_{10} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, Het or (lower alkyl)-Het; NO_2 ; OH; halo; trifluoromethyl; carboxyl; C_6 or C_{10} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, or Het, said aryl, aralkyl or Het being optionally substituted with R_{22} , wherein

R₂₂ is C₁₋₆ alkyl; C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl; C₁₋₆ alkoxy; amino; mono- or di-(lower

alkyl)amino; (lower alkyl)amide; sulfonylalkyl; NO₂; OH; halo; trifluoromethyl; carboxyl or Het.

- 22. A compound of formula I according to claim 21, wherein R₂₁ is C₁₋₆ alkyl; C₁₋₆ alkoxy; amino; di(lower alkyl)amino; (lower alkyl)amide; C₆ or C₁₀ aryl, or Het, said aryl or Het being optionally substituted with R₂₂, wherein R₂₂ is C₁₋₆ alkyl; C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl; C₁₋₆ alkoxy; amino; mono- or di(lower alkyl)amino; amido; (lower alkyl)amide; halo; trifluoromethyl or Het.
- 23. A compound of formula I according to claim 22, wherein R₂₂ is C₁₋₆ alkyl; C₁₋₆ alkoxy; halo; amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with lower alkyl; amido; (lower alkyl)amide; or Het.
- 24. A compound of formula I according to claim 23, wherein R₂₂ is methyl; ethyl; isopropyl; tert-butyl; methoxy; chloro; amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with lower alkyl; amido, (lower alkyl)amide; or (lower alkyl) 2-thiazole.
- 25. A compound of formula I according to claim 21, wherein R₂ is selected from the group consisting of:

- 26. A compound of formula I according to claim 21, wherein R₂ is 1-naphthylmethoxy; 2-naphthylmethoxy; benzyloxy, 1-naphthyloxy; 2-naphthyloxy; or quinolinoxy unsubstituted, mono- or di-substituted with R₂₁ as defined in claim 21.
- 27. A compound of formula I according to claim 26, wherein R₂ is 1-naphtylmethoxy; or quinolinoxy unsubstituted, mono- or di-substituted with R₂₁ as defined in claim 26.
- 28. A compound of formula I according to claim 27, wherein R₂ is selected from the group consisting of:

29. A compound of formula I according to claim 26, wherein R₂ is:

wherein R_{21A} is C₁₋₆ alkyl; C₁₋₆ alkoxy; lower thioalkyl; halo; amino optionally monosubstituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl; or C₆, C₁₀ aryl, C₇₋₁₆ aralkyl, or Het, sais aryl, aralkyl or Het optionally substituted with R₂₂ wherein R₂₂ is C₁₋₆ alkyl, C₁₋₆ alkoxy, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C_{1.6} alkyl, or Het; and

R_{21B} is C₁₋₆ alkyl, C₁₋₆ alkoxy, amino, di(lower alkyl)amino, (lower alkyl)amide, NO₂ OH, halo, trifluoromethyl, or carboxyl.

- A compound of formula I according to claim 29, wherein R_{21A} is C₆, C₁₀ aryl or Het, 30. all optionally substituted with R_{22} as defined in claim 30.
- A compound of formula I according to claim 30, wherein R_{21A} is selected from the 31. group consisting of:

32. A compound of formula I according to claim 29, wherein R₂ is:

wherein R_{22A} is C₁₋₆ alkyl; C₁₋₆ alkoxy; or halo; and R_{21B} is C₁₋₆ alkyl, C₁₋₆ alkoxy,

amino, di(lower alkyl)amino, (lower alkyl)amide, NO_{2,} OH, halo, trifluoromethyl, or carboxyl.

33. A compound of formula I according to claim 29, wherein R2 is:

wherein R_{22B} is C_{1-6} alkyl, amino optionally mono-substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, amido, or (lower alkyl)amide; ; and R_{21B} is C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{1-6} alkoxy, amino, di(lower alkyl)amino, (lower alkyl)amide, NO_2 OH, halo, trifluoromethyl, or carboxyl.

- **34.** A compound of formula I according to claim 32 or 33, wherein R_{21B} is C₁₋₆ alkoxy, or di(lower alkyl)amino.
- 35. A compound of formula I according to claim 32 or 33, wherein R_{21B} is methoxy.
- 36. A compound of formula I according to claim 1, wherein P1 is a cyclobutyl or cyclopropyl ring, both optionally substituted with R₁, wherein R¹ is H, C₁₋₃ alkyl, C₃₋₅ cycloalkyl, or C₂₋₄ alkenyl, all optionally substituted with halo.
- **37.** A compound of formula I according to claim 36, wherein **P1** is cyclopropyl and **R**¹ is ethyl, vinyl, cyclopropyl, 1 or 2-bromoethyl or 1 or 2-bromovinyl.
- **38.** A compound of formula I according to claim 37, wherein R_1 is vinyl.
- **39.** A compound of formula I according to claim 37, wherein **R**₁ at carbon 2 is orientated syn to the carbonyl at position 1, represented by the radical:

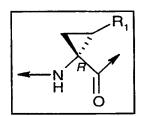
$$\begin{array}{c|c} & & & \\ &$$

40. A compound of formula I according to claim 37, wherein R₁ at position 2 is

orientated anti to the carbonyl at position 1, represented by the radical:

41. A compound of formula I according to claim 37, wherein carbon 1 has the *R* configuration:

42. An optical isomer of a compound of formula I according to claim 41, wherein said R₁ substituent and the carbonyl in a *syn* orientation in the following absolute configuration:



- **43.** A compound of formula I according to claim 42, wherein R_1 is ethyl, hence the asymmetric carbon atoms at positions 1 and 2 have the R,R configuration.
- 44. A compound of formula I according to claim 42, wherein \mathbf{R}_1 is vinyl, hence the asymmetric carbon atoms at positions 1 and 2 have the R,S configuration.
- 45. A compound of formula I according to claim 1, wherein

B is a C_6 or C_{10} aryl or C_{7-16} aralkyl, all optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{1-6} alkoxy, C_{1-6} alkanoyl, hydroxy, hydroxyalkyl, halo, haloalkyl, nitro, cyano, cyanoalkyl, amido, (lower alkyl)amido, or amino optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl; or Het or (lower alkyl)-Het, all optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{1-6} alkoxy, C_{1-6}

alkanoyl, hydroxy, hydroxyalkyl, halo, haloalkyl, nitro, cyano, cyanoalkyl, amido, (lower alkyl)amido, or amino optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl,. or **B** is R_4 -SO₂ wherein R_4 is preferably amido; (lower alkyl)amide; C_6 or C_{10} aryl, C_{7-14} aralkyl or Het, all optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, or

- B is an acyl derivative of formula R₄-C(O)- wherein R₄ is
 - (i) C_{1-10} alkyl optionally substituted with carboxyl, hydroxy or C_{1-6} alkoxy, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, or amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl;
 - (ii) C_{3-7} cycloalkyl or C_{4-10} alkylcycloalkyl, both optionally substituted with hydroxy, carboxyl, (C_{1-6} alkoxy)carbonyl, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, or amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl;
 - (iv) C_6 or C_{10} aryl or C_{7-16} aralkyl, all optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, hydroxy, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, or amino optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl;
 - (v) Het or (lower alkyl)-Het, both optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, hydroxy, amino optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, or amino optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, or

B is a carboxyl of formula R_4 -O-C(O)-, wherein R_4 is

- (i) C_{1-10} alkyl optionally substituted with carboxyl, C_{1-6} alkanoyl, hydroxy, C_{1-6} alkoxy, amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, amido or (lower alkyl)amide;
- (ii) C_{3-7} cycloalkyl, C_{4-10} alkylcycloalkyl, all optionally substituted with carboxyl, $(C_{1-6}$ alkoxy)carbonyl, amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, amido or (lower alkyl)amide;
- (iv) C_6 or C_{10} aryl or C_{7-16} aralkyl optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, hydroxy, amido, (lower alkyl)amido, or amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl; or
- (v) Het or (lower alkyl)-Het, both optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, hydroxy, amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, amido or (lower alkyl)amido, or

B is an amide of formula R_4 - $N(R_5)$ -C(O)- wherein R_4 is

(i) C_{1-10} alkyl optionally substituted with carboxyl, C_{1-6} alkanoyl, hydroxy, C_{1-6} alkoxy, amido, (lower alkyl)amido, or amino optionally mono- or di-substituted

with C₁₋₆ alkyl;

- (ii) C_{3-7} cycloalkyl or C_{4-10} alkylcycloalkyl, all optionally substituted with carboxyl, (C_{1-6} alkoxy)carbonyl, amido, (lower alkyl)amido, or amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl;
- (iii) amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₃ alkyl;
- (iv) C_6 or C_{10} aryl or C_{7-16} aralkyl, all optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, hydroxy, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, or amino optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl; or
- (v) Het or (lower alkyl)-Het, both optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, hydroxy, amino optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, amido or (lower alkyl)amide; and R_5 is H or methyl, or

B is thioamide of formula R_4 -NH-C(S)-; wherein R_4 is

- (i) C_{1-10} alkyl optionally substituted with carboxyl, C_{1-6} alkanoyl or C_{1-6} alkoxy;
- (ii) C_{3-7} cycloalkyl or C_{4-10} alkylcycloalkyl, all optionally substituted with carboxyl, (C_{1-6} alkoxy)carbonyl, amino or amido;

Y is H or methyl;

 R^3 is C_{1-8} alkyl, C_{3-7} cycloalkyl, or C_{4-10} alkylcycloalkyl, all optionally substituted with hydroxy, C_{1-6} alkoxy, C_{1-6} thioalkyl, acetamido, C_6 or C_{10} aryl, or C_{7-16} aralkyl;

 R_2 is S- R_{20} or O- R_{20} wherein R_{20} is preferably a C₆ or C₁₀ aryl, C₇₋₁₆ aralkyl, Het or - CH₂-Het, all optionally mono-, di- or tri-substituted with R_{21} , wherein

 $\mathbf{R_{21}}$ is C_{1-6} alkyl; C_{1-6} alkoxy; lower thioalkyl; amino or amido optionally monoor di-substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, C_6 or C_{10} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, Het or (lower alkyl)-Het; NO_2 ; OH; halo; trifluoromethyl; carboxyl; C_6 or C_{10} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, or Het, said aryl, aralkyl or Het being optionally substituted with $\mathbf{R_{22}}$, wherein

 $\mathbf{R_{22}}$ is C_{1-6} alkyl; C_{3-7} cycloalkyl; C_{1-6} alkoxy; amino; mono- or di-(lower alkyl)amino; (lower alkyl)amide; sulfonylalkyl; NO_2 ; OH; halo; trifluoromethyl; carboxyl or Het; or

R₂ is selected from the group consisting of:

or $\mathbf{R_2}$ is 1-naphthylmethoxy; 2-naphthylmethoxy; benzyloxy, 1-naphthyloxy; 2-naphthyloxy; or quinolinoxy unsubstituted, mono- or di-substituted with $\mathbf{R_{21}}$ as defined above; and

the **P1** segment is a cyclopropyl ring, both optionally substituted with R_1 , wherein R^1 is C_{1-3} alkyl, C_{3-5} cycloalkyl, or C_{2-4} alkenyl optionally substituted with halo, and said R_1 at carbon 2 is orientated *syn* to the carbonyl at position 1, represented by the radical:

$$\begin{bmatrix} R_1 \\ N \\ H \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} R_1 \\ O \\ O \end{bmatrix}$$
 and
$$\begin{bmatrix} R_1 \\ N \\ O \end{bmatrix}$$

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or ester thereof.

46. A compound of formula I according to claim 45, wherein B is a C₆ or C₁₀ aryl optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, C₁₋₆ alkoxy, C₁₋₆ alkanoyl, hydroxy, hydroxyalkyl, halo, haloalkyl, nitro, cyano, cyanoalkyl, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, or amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl; or B is Het optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, C₁₋₆ alkoxy, C₁₋₆ alkanoyl, hydroxy, halo, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, or amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl; or

B is \mathbf{R}_4 -SO₂ wherein \mathbf{R}_4 is C₆ or C₁₀ aryl, a C₇₋₁₄ aralkyl or Het all optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl; amido, (lower alkyl)amide; **B** is an acyl derivative of formula \mathbf{R}_4 -C(O)- wherein \mathbf{R}_4 is

- (i) C₁₋₁₀ alkyl optionally substituted with carboxyl, hydroxy or C₁₋₆ alkoxy; or
- (ii) C_{3-7} cycloalkyl or C_{4-10} alkylcycloalkyl, both optionally substituted with hydroxy, carboxyl, (C_{1-6} alkoxy)carbonyl; or
- (iv) C_6 or C_{10} aryl or C_{7-16} aralkyl, all optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, hydroxy; or

- (v) Het optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, hydroxy, amido or amino; or **B** is a carboxyl of formula R_4 -O-C(O)-, wherein R_4 is
 - (i) C_{1-10} alkyl optionally substituted with carboxyl, C_{1-6} alkanoyl, hydroxy, C_{1-6} alkoxy or amido, (lower alkyl)amide, amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl;
 - (ii) C_{3-7} cycloalkyl, C_{4-10} alkylcycloalkyl, all optionally substituted with carboxyl, $(C_{1-6}$ alkoxy)carbonyl, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl; or
 - (iv) C_6 or C_{10} aryl or C_{7-16} aralkyl, all optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, hydroxy, amino optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl; or
 - (v) Het or (lower alkyl)-Het, both optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, hydroxy, amido, or amino optionally mono-substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl;

or B is an amide of formula R₄-N(R₅)-C(O)- wherein R₄ is

- (i) C_{1-10} alkyl optionally substituted with carboxyl, C_{1-6} alkanoyl, hydroxy, C_{1-6} alkoxy, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl;
- (ii) C_{3-7} cycloalkyl or C_{4-10} alkylcycloalkyl, all optionally substituted with carboxyl, (C_{1-6} alkoxy)carbonyl, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl; and \mathbf{R}_5 is H or methyl; or \mathbf{R}_4 is (iii) amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C_{1-3} alkyl; or
- (iv) C_6 or C_{10} aryl or C_{7-16} aralkyl, all optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, hydroxy, amino or amido optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl; or
- (v) Het optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, hydroxy, amino or amido; or

B is a thioamide of formula R₄-NH-C(S)-; wherein R₄ is:

(i) C₁₋₁₀ alkyl; or (ii) C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl; or

Y is H:

R³ is the side chain of tert-butylglycine (Tbg), lle, Val, Chg or:

 $\mathbf{R_2}$ is 1-naphtylmethoxy; or quinolinoxy unsubstituted, mono- or di-substituted with $\mathbf{R_{21}}$ as defined above, or

R₂ is:

wherein $\mathbf{R_{21A}}$ is C_{1-6} alkyl; C_{1-6} alkoxy; C_6 , C_{10} aryl or Het; lower thioalkyl; halo; amino optionally mono-substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl; or C_6 , C_{10} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl or Het, optionally substituted with $\mathbf{R_{22}}$ wherein $\mathbf{R_{22}}$ is C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{1-6} alkoxy, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, or Het;

P1 is a cyclopropyl ring wherein carbon 1 has the R configuration,

R¹ is ethyl, vinyl, cyclopropyl, 1 or 2-bromoethyl or 1 or 2-bromovinyl.

47. A compound of formula I according to claim 46, wherein

B is an amide of formula R₄-NH-C(O)- wherein R₄ is

- i) C_{1-10} alkyl optionally substituted with carboxyl, C_{1-6} alkanoyl, hydroxy, C_{1-6} alkoxy amido, (lower alkyl)amide, amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl;
- (ii) C_{3-7} cycloalkyl or C_{4-10} alkylcycloalkyl, all optionally substituted with carboxyl, (C_{1-6} alkoxy)carbonyl, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl;
- (iv) C_6 or C_{10} aryl or C_{7-16} aralkyl optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, hydroxy, amino or amido:

R³ is the side chain of Tbg, Chg or Val;

R₂ is:

$$R_{22A}$$
 R_{21B}
 R_{21B}
 R_{21B}

wherein \mathbf{R}_{22A} is C_{1-6} alkyl (such as methyl); C_{1-6} alkoxy (such as methoxy); or halo (such as chloro); \mathbf{R}_{22B} is C_{1-6} alkyl, amino optionally mono-substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, amido, or (lower alkyl)amide; and \mathbf{R}_{21B} is C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{1-6} alkoxy, amino, di(lower alkyl)amino, (lower alkyl)amide, NO_2 , OH, halo, trifluoromethyl, or carboxyl; and **P1** is:

48. A compound according to claim 45 represented by the formula:

wherein $\boldsymbol{B},\,\boldsymbol{R_3},\,\boldsymbol{R_2}$ are as defined below:

Tab 1 Cpd#	В	R ₃	R ₂	
101	Boc	cHex	-O-CH ₂ -1-naphthyl	;
102		cHex	-O-CH ₂ -1-naphthyl	;
103	~. ¹	cHex	-O-CH₂-1-naphthyl	;

Tab 1 Cpd#	B	R ₃	R ₂	
104		cHex	-O-CH₂-1-naphthyl	;
105	N H	сНех	-O-CH₂-1-naphthyl	•
106	Вос	cHex	NO ₂	· ;
107	CI CI CI	cHex	-O-CH₂-1-naphthyl	,
108	Вос	iPr	NO ₂	;
109	acetyl	сНех	N _{NO₂}	;
110	Вос	i-Pr	CI	;
and 111	Boc	<i>t</i> -Bu		•

- 49. Compound # 111 according to claim 48.
- 50. A compound according to claim 45 represented by the formula:

wherein B, R_3 , R_2 , R_1 are as defined below:

В	R ₃	R ₂	R ₁
Вос	cyclohexyl	-O-CH ₂ -1-naphthyl	ethyl (one isomer)
Вос	cyclohexyl	-O-CH ₂ -1-naphthyl	ethyl (other isomer)
Boc	<i>t</i> -Bu		vinyl 1 <i>R, 2R</i>
	Boc Boc	Boc cyclohexyl	Boc cyclohexyl -O-CH ₂ -1-naphthyl

- 51. Compound #203 according to claim 49.
- 52. A compound according to claim 45 represented by the formula:

wherein ${\bf B},\,{\bf R_3},\,{\bf R_2}$ and ${\bf R_1}$ are as defined below:

Table 3 Cpd #	В	R ₃	R ₂	R ₁ syn to carboxyl	
301	Вос	cHex	-O-CH ₂ -1-naphthyl	ethyl	;
302	>>° !	iPr	-O-CH ₂ -1-naphthyl	ethyl	;

Table 3 Cpd #	В.	R ₃	R ₂	R ₁	
303		cHex	-O-CH₂-1-naphthyl	ethyl	;
304	Вос	сНех	OCH ₂	ethyl	;
305	Вос	cHex	-O-CH₂-1-naphthyl	vinyl	;
306	Вос	cHex		vinyl	;
307	Вос	сНех	NO ₂	vinyl	;
308	Вос	сНех		vinyl	;
309	Вос	сНех		vinyl	;
310	Вос	сНех		vinyl	;
311	Boc	сНех	CI	vinyl	;
312	Вос	сНех		vinyl	;
313	Boc	cHex		vinyl	;

Table 3 Cpd #	В	R ₃	R ₂	R ₁ syn to carboxyl	
314	Boc	сНех	N	vinyl	;
315	Вос	сНех	NH ₂	vinyl	•
316	Acetyl	cHex		vinyl	9
317	Вос	cHex		vinyl	
318	CF ₃ -C(O)-	i-Pr		vinyl	,
319		cHex	N N N N N N N N N N N N N N N N N N N	vinyl	•
320	но	cHex	N N N N N N N N N N N N N N N N N N N	vinyl	7
321	Boc	<i>t-</i> Bu	N	vinyl	
			**		

-	-	-
- 1	_	4
	-	

Table 3 Cpd #	В	R ₃	R ₂	R ₁ syn to carboxyl	•
322	Вос	<i>t</i> -Bu	CF ₃	vinyl	· • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •
323	Вос	<i>t</i> -Bu	O N		;
324	Вос	<i>t</i> -Bu	N N N O O	vinyl	;
325	Boc	<i>t-</i> Bu	OMe		,
326	Вос	t-Bu		vinyl	;
327	→ _N ↓	t-Bu	OMe	vinyl	;
328	Вос	<i>t</i> -Bu	CI N	vinyl	;
329	Вос	<i>t</i> -Bu		vinyl	;

WO 00/09543 PCT/CA99/00736

146 R₂ R₁
syn to
carboxyl Table 3 Cpd # R₃ В Boc t-Bu 330 vinyl 331 *t*-Bu vinyl Boc t-Bu ethyl 332 t-Bu vinyl 333 t-Bu vinyl and 334

53. A compound according to claim 52, selected from the group consisting of compound #: 307,314, 317, 319, 321, 324, 325, 326, 327, 329, 331, 332, 333, and 334.

54. A compound according to claim 45 represented by the formula:

wherein B, R₃, R₂ and R₁ are as defined below:

Table 4 Cpd #	В	R ₃	R ₂	R ₁	
401	Вос	<i>i</i> -Pr	CI	H	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •
402	Вос	t-Bu	CI	Ĥ	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •
403	Вос	<i>t</i> -Bu	OMe	Н	•
404	Вос	<i>t</i> -Bu	OMe	3-(=CH ₂)	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •
405	Вос	<i>t-</i> Bu	OMe	2-vinyl	;
and 406	Boc	t-Bu	OMe	2-Et	•

55. A compound according to claim 54, selected from the group consisting of compound

#: 403, 405, and 406.

56. A compound according to claim 45 represented by the formula:

wherein \mathbf{R}_3 is as defined below:

Table 5 Cpd #	R ₃	, jan-	Table 5 Cpd #	R ₃
501	t-Bu	; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ;	507	s d
502	Н	; ;	508	\$ /-
503	\	;	509	\
504	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	; ;	510	
505		. ;	and 511	ОН
506		; ;		
m odnosta v mar de Mar e	•	: 	<u>.</u>	

- **57.** A compound according to claim 56, selected from the group consisting of compound #: **501**, **509**, and **510**.
- **58.** A compound according to claim 46 represented by the formula:

wherein R_3 , R_{21A} and R_{21B} are as defined below:

Table 6 Cpd #	R ₃	R _{21A}	R ₂₁₈	
601	<i>i</i> -Pr	Ph	7-OMe	;
602	t-Bu	Ph	8-OMe, 7-OMe	;
603	i-Pr	Ph	7-ethyl	;
604	t-Bu		7-OMe	;
605	t-Bu	Ph	7-0- <i>i</i> Pr	;
606	<i>t</i> -Bu		7-CI	;
607	<i>i</i> Pr		7-Cl	;
608	CH₂- <i>i</i> Pr		7-CI	;
609	<i>t</i> -Bu	0 N	;	;
610	<i>t</i> -Bu	CI	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	;
611	<i>t</i> -Bu	Ph	7-N(Me) ₂	;
612	<i>t</i> -Bu			;
613	<i>t</i> -Bu		••• :	;

Table 6 Cpd #	R ₃	R _{21A}	R _{21B}	
614	<i>t</i> -Bu	\bigcirc_{N}		;
615	t-Bu		7-N(Me) ₂	;
616	<i>t</i> -Bu	H ₂ N N	 ,	;
617	<i>t</i> -Bu	N		;
618	<i>t</i> -Bu	Me Me—N	:	;
619	<i>t</i> -Bu	Ph J MeN		;
620	<i>t</i> -Bu	Me N		;
621	<i>t</i> -Bu	Me N		;
622	<i>t-</i> Bu	Me	:	;
623	<i>t</i> -Bu	MeO-		;
624	<i>t</i> -Bu	(Me)₂N-		;
625	<i>t</i> -Bu	Ph	7-S(Me)	;
626	<i>t</i> -Bu	Ph	7-Br	;
627	<i>t</i> -Bu	Ph	7-F	;
628	<i>t</i> -Bu	HN	7-N(Me) ₂	;
629	t-Bu	N N N N N N N N N N N N N N N N N N N	7-N(Me) ₂	;
			- ·	

Table 6 Cpd #	R ₃	R _{21A}	R _{21B}
and	t-Bu		7-N(Et) ₂
630		N	
)—'n	
		S	

- 59. A compound according to claim 58, selected from the group consisting of compound
 #: 601, 602, 603, 604, 605, 606, 607, 610, 611, 612, 615, 616, 617, 620, 621, 622,
 625, 626, 627, 628, 629, and 630.
- 60. A compound according to claim 46 represented by the formula:

wherein R_3 and R_{21A} are as defined below:

Table 7 Cpd #	R ₃	R _{21A}	
701	<i>t</i> -Bu	Me_N	;
702	<i>t</i> -Bu	Ph	;
703	<i>t</i> -Bu	Me	;
704	<i>t</i> -Bu		;
705	<i>t</i> -Bu	O N	;
706	<i>t</i> -Bu	s s	;

Table 7	R ₃	R _{21A}	
Cpd # 707	<i>t</i> -Bu	S	;
708	<i>t</i> -Bu	Ph-N(Me)-	;
709	<i>t</i> -Bu	H ₂ N N	;
710	<i>t</i> -Bu	HOOC-	;
711	<i>t</i> -Bu	Me N	;
712	<i>t</i> -Bu	(Me)₂N-	;
713	t-Bu	S	;
714	<i>f</i> -Bu	Et N	;
715	<i>t</i> -Bu	N	;
716	<i>t</i> -Bu	N	;
717	<i>t</i> -Bu	Me HN S	;
718	t-Bu	NH ₂	;
719	<i>t</i> -Bu	The same of the sa	;
720	<i>t</i> -Bu	X _N	;
721	<i>t</i> -Bu		;

Table 7 Cpd # 722	R ₃	R _{21A}	;
723	t-Bu	HN	;
724	<i>t</i> -Bu		;
725	t-Bu	N N	;
726	<i>t</i> -Bu	<i>i-</i> Pr	;
727	<i>t</i> -Bu	N	;
728	<i>t</i> -Bu	O S O S	;
729	<i>t</i> -Bu	N	;
730	<i>t</i> -Bu		;
731	<i>t</i> -Bu		;
732	<i>t</i> -Bu	S N S N	;

Table 7 Cpd # 733	R₃ <i>t-</i> Bu	R _{21A}	•
733	7-50	N N	,
734	t-Bu	S	;
735	<i>t</i> -Bu	Ta	;
736	<i>t</i> -Bu	<i>t</i> -Bu	;
and 737	<i>t</i> -Bu	CHex	•

- 61. A compound according to claim 60, selected from the group consisting of compound #: 701, 702, 703, 704, 705, 706, 707, 708, 709, and 711 to 737.
- **62.** A compound according to claim 45 represented by the formula:

wherein $\boldsymbol{B},\,\boldsymbol{R_{3}},$ and $\boldsymbol{R_{22}}$ are as defined below:

Table 8 Cpd #	В	R ₃	R ₂₂	
801	N	<i>t</i> -Bu		;
802	но	<i>t</i> -Bu		;

Table 8 Cpd #	B	R ₃	R ₂₂	
803		<i>t</i> -Bu		;
804		<i>t</i> -Bu		;
805	Ac	<i>t</i> -Bu		;
806		<i>t</i> -Bu		;
807	N	<i>t</i> -Bu		;
808	O _N !	<i>t</i> -Bu		;
809		<i>i</i> -Pr		;
810		<i>t</i> -Bu	* · · · ·	;
811	Вос	<i>t</i> -Bu	4-CI	;
812	O I	<i>t</i> -Bu		;
813	N S	<i>t</i> -Bu		;
814	Boc	<i>t</i> -Bu	2-CI	;
815	Вос	<i>t</i> -Bu	3-CI	;
816	N	<i>t</i> -Bu		;
817		<i>t</i> -Bu	→ •	;

Table 8 Cpd #	B	R ₃	R ₂₂	
818	S I	<i>t</i> -Bu		;
819	O ₂ N CF ₃	<i>i</i> -Pr		;
820	CF ₃	<i>i</i> -Pr	- 	;
821	OMe	<i>i</i> -Pr		;
822	Me	<i>i</i> -Pr		;
823	Вос	<i>t</i> -Bu	2-OMe	;
824	Вос	<i>t</i> -Bu	3-ОМе	;
825	Вос	<i>t</i> -Bu	4-OMe	;
826		<i>i</i> -Pr		;
827	Me O	<i>t</i> -Bu		;
828	Me	<i>i</i> -Pr		;
829	Me o N	<i>t</i> -Bu	<u></u> .	;
830		<i>t</i> -Bu		;
831	H ₂ N N	t-Bu	••	;
832	H ₂ N $\stackrel{\text{Me}}{=}$ $\stackrel{\text{O}}{=}$	<i>t</i> -Bu		;
			-	

Table 8 Cpd #	B	R ₃	R ₂₂	
833	H ₂ N Me N	<i>t</i> -Bu		;
834	Me	<i>i</i> -Pr		;
835	HO Me N	<i>t</i> -Bu		;
836	02N	<i>i</i> -Pr		;
837	CI	<i>i</i> -Pr		;
838	но	<i>i</i> -Pr		;
839	NC	<i>i</i> -Pr		;
840		<i>i</i> -Pr		;
841	Вос	<i>t</i> -Bu	2-Me	;
842	Вос	<i>t</i> -Bu	3-Me	;
843	Вос	t-Bu	4-Me	;
844	N N N N N N N N N N N N N N N N N N N	<i>t</i> -Bu	4-OMe	;
845	J'N C	<i>i</i> -Pr	——————————————————————————————————————	;
846		<i>i</i> -Pr		;
847	Вос	cHex		;

WO 00/09543 PCT/CA99/00736

Table 8 Cpd #	В	R ₃	R_{22}	
848	Вос			;
849	Вос		 	;
850	Вос			;
851	Вос	0		;
852	Вос		- 2-	;
853	Boc		<u></u> 9.	;
854		<i>i</i> -Pr		;
855	HO	<i>i</i> -Pr		; .
856	NC NC	<i>i</i> -Pr		;
857	MeO	<i>t</i> -Bu		;
858	N Me	<i>t</i> -Bu		;
859		<i>i</i> -Pr		;

Table 8 Cpd #	В В	R ₃	R ₂₂	
860	· O.O.	<i>i</i> -Pr		;
861	NC NC	⊬Pr		;
862	F	<i>i</i> -Pr		;
863		<i>i</i> -Pr		;
864	F	<i>i</i> -Pr	-	;
865	اً ا	<i>t</i> -Bu	·	;
866	H ₂ N	<i>t</i> -Bu		;
867		<i>t</i> -Bu		;
868	٥	<i>t</i> -Bu		;
869	Q.i.	<i>t</i> -Bu		;
870	V N	t-Bu	. 	;
871	N.	<i>t</i> -Bu		;
872	N N	<i>t</i> -Bu	••	;

Table 8	В	R ₃	R ₂₂
Cpd # and	- O	<i>t</i> -Bu	+-
873	N		
	•	:	

- 63. A compound according to claim 62, selected from the group consisting of compound #: 801 to 825, 827 to 858, and 860 to 873.
- 64. A compound according to claim 45 represented by the formula:

wherein B is as defined below:

Table 9 Cpd #	В	
905		;
906	N I	;
907	s o	;
908		;
909		;
910		;
911	но	;
912	S S S	;
913	S O	;
914		;

Table 9 Cpd #	B
915	ş
	N
and	~ 0
916	
1	,Ñ_
	I I

65. A compound according to claim 45 represented by the formula:

wherein B, X, R_3 , z and R_{21B} are as defined below:

Table 10 Cpd #	B-X-	R ₃	Z	R _{21B}
1001	Ph-N(Me)-	<i>i</i> -Pr	0	н;
1002	Boc-NH-	t-Bu	S	OMe;
and 1003	(N) Me	⊬Pr	Ō	

- 66. A pharmaceutical composition comprising an anti-hepatitis C virally effective amount of a compound of formula I according to claim 1, or a therapeutically acceptable salt or ester thereof, in admixture with a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier medium or auxiliary agent.
- 67. A method of treating a hepatitis C viral infection in a mammal by administering to the mammal an anti-hepatitis C virally effective amount of the compound of formula I according to claim 1, or a therapeutically acceptable salt or ester thereof.

- **68.** A method of treating a hepatitis C viral infection in a mammal by administering to the mammal an anti-hepatitis C virally effective amount of the composition according to claim 67.
- 69. A method of inhibiting the replication of hepatitis C virus by exposing the virus to a hepatitis C viral NS3 protease inhibiting amount of the compound of formula I according to claim 1, or a therapeutically acceptable salt or ester thereof.
- 70. A method of treating a hepatitis C viral infection in a mammal by administering thereto an anti-hepatitis C virally effective amount of a combination of the compound of formula I according to claim 1, or a therapeutically acceptable salt or ester thereof with another anti-HCV agent.
- 71. A method according to claim 70, wherein said other anti-HCV agent is selected from the group consisting of: α or β -interferon, ribavirin and amantadine.
- **72.** A method according to claim 70, wherein said other anti-HCV agent comprises an inhibitor of other targets in the HCV life cycle, selected from: helicase, polymerase, metalloprotease or IRES.
- 73. A process for the preparation of a peptide analog of formula (I) wherein P1 is a substituted aminocyclopropyl carboxylic acid residue, comprising the step of: coupling a peptide selected from the group consisting of: APG-P3-P2; or APG-P2; with a P1 intermediate of formula:

wherein $\mathbf{R_1}$ is C_{1-6} alkyl, cycloalkyl or C_{2-6} alkenyl, all optionally substituted with halogen, CPG is a carboxyl protecting group and APG is an amino protecting group and P3 and P2 are as defined above.

74. A process for the preparation of: 1)a serine protease inhibitor peptide analog, or 2) a HCV NS3 protease inhibitor peptide analog, this process comprising the step of: coupling a (suitably protected) amino acid, peptide or peptide fragment with a P1 intermediate of formula:

wherein $\mathbf{R_1}$ is C_{1-6} alkyl, cycloalkyl or C_{2-6} alkenyl, all optionally substituted with halogen, and CPG is a carboxyl protecting group.

75. A process for the preparation of: 1) a protease inhibitor peptide analog, or 2) a serine protease inhibitor peptide analog, this process comprising the step of: coupling a (suitably protected) amino acid, peptide or peptide fragment with an intermediate of formula:

wherein CPG is a carboxyl protecting group.

76. Use of a P1 intermediate of formula:

wherein R_1 is C_{1-6} alkyl, cycloalkyl or C_{2-6} alkenyl, all optionally substituted with halogen and CPG is a carboxyl protecting group, for the preparation of: 1)a serine protease inhibitor peptide analog, or 2) a HCV NS3 protease inhibitor peptide analog.

77. Use of an intermediate of formula:

wherein CPG is a carboxyl protecting group, for the preparation of: 1) a protease

inhibitor peptide analog, or 2) a serine protease inhibitor peptide analog.

78. Use of a P1 intermediate of formula:

wherein \mathbf{R}_1 is C_{1-6} alkyl, cycloalkyl or C_{2-6} alkenyl, all optionally substituted with halogen and CPG is a carboxyl protecting group, for the preparation of a compound of formula I as defined above.

79. An amino acid analog compound selected from the group consisting of:

$$H_2N$$
 OH H_2N OH H_2N OH H_2N OH H_2N OH H_2N OH

- 80. The process according to claim 73, 74 or 75 wherein said carboxyl protecting group (CPG) is selected from the group consisting of: alkyl esters, aralkyl esters, and esters being cleavable by mild base treatment or mild reductive means.
- 81. The process according to claim 73, 74 or 75 wherein said amino protecting group (APG) is selected from the group consisting of: acyl groups, aromatic carbamate groups, aliphatic carbamate groups, cyclic alkyl carbamate groups, alkyl groups, trialkylsilyl, and thiol-containing groups.
- 82. A process for the resolution of enantiomers from a mixture of (1R,2S)/(1S,2S)-1-amino-2-vinylcyclopropyl carboxylic acid methyl ester, comprising the step of treating said mixture with an esterase to obtain the corresponding (1R,2S) enantiomer.
- 83. A process according to claim 82, wherein said esterase is Alcalase®.
- 84. Use of a proline analog of formula:

WO 00/09543 PCT/CA99/00736

166

wherein R_{21A} is C_{1-6} alkyl; C_{1-6} alkoxy; lower thioalkyl; halo; amino optionally monosubstituted with C_{1-6} alkyl; C_6 , C_{10} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl or Het, said aryl, aralkyl or Het optionally substituted with R_{22} wherein R_{22} is C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{1-6} alkoxy, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, or Het; and

 R_{21B} is C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{1-6} alkoxy, amino, di(lower alkyl)amino, (lower alkyl)amide, NO_{2} , OH, halo, trifluoromethyl, or carboxyl;

for the synthesis of 1) a serine protease inhibitor peptide analog, 2) a HCV NS3 protease inhibitor peptide analog, or 3) a peptide analog of formula I.

- 85. Use of an anti-hepatitis C virally effective amount of the compound of formula I according to claim 1, or a therapeutically acceptable salt or ester thereof for the preparation of a composition for treating a hepatitis C viral infection in a mammal.
- 86. Use of a hepatitis C viral NS3 protease inhibiting amount of the compound of formula I according to claim 1, or a therapeutically acceptable salt or ester thereof for the preparation of a composition for inhibiting the replication of hepatitis C virus.
- 87. Use of an anti-hepatitis C virally effective amount of a combination of the compound of formula I according to claim 1, or a therapeutically acceptable salt or ester thereof, and an interferon for the preparation of a composition for treating a hepatitis C viral infection in a mammal.



INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

(51) International Patent Classification 7:

C07K 5/083, A61K 38/06, C12P 41/00, C07K 5/087, C07C 229/48

A3

(11) International Publication Number:

WO 00/09543

(43) International Publication Date:

24 February 2000 (24.02.00)

(21) International Application Number:

PCT/CA99/00736

(22) International Filing Date:

9 August 1999 (09.08.99)

(30) Priority Data:

60/095,931 60/132,386 10 August 1998 (10.08.98)

4 May 1999 (04.05.99)

US (7

(71) Applicant (for all designated States except US):
BOEHRINGER INGELHEIM (CANADA) LTD. [CA/CA];
2100 Cunard Street, Laval, Québec H7S 2G5 (CA).

(72) Inventors; and

(75) Inventors, and
(75) Inventors/Applicants (for US only): LLINAS-BRUNET,
Montse [CA/CA]; 14 Rushbrooke, Dollard-Des-Ormeaux,
Québec H9B 3K6 (CA). BAILEY, Murray, D. [CA/CA];
344 Groulx, Pierrefonds, Québec H8Y 1B3 (CA).
CAMERON, Dale [CA/CA]; 493 de l'Érablière, Rosemère,
Québec J7A 4M4 (CA). FAUCHER, Anne-Marie [CA/CA];
11 Lefebvre North, Oka, Québec J0N 1E0 (CA). GHIRO,
Elise [CA/CA]; 768 Pierre, Laval, Québec H7X 3L8
(CA). GOUDREAU, Nathalie [CA/CA]; 416 Graham,
Mont-Royal, Québec H3P 2C9 (CA). HALMOS, Teddy
[CA/CA]; 1935 Jean Picard #8, Laval, Québec H7T 2K4
(CA). POUPART, Marc-André [CA/CA]; 101 Aimé
Séguin, Vimont, Québec H7M 1B3 (CA). RANCOURT,

Jean [CA/CA]; 6400 de l'Aiglon, Laval, Québec H7L 4W2 (CA). TSANTRIZOS, Youla, S. [CA/CA]; 1590 Champigny, Saint-Laurent, Québec H4L 4P7 (CA). WERNIC, Dominik, M. [CA/CA]; 900 des Giroflées, Laval, Québec H7X 3G5 (CA). SIMONEAU, Bruno [CA/CA]; 2615 de la volière, Laval, Québec H7L 3V6 (CA).

(74) Agent: BERNIER, Louise, G.; Boehringer Ingelheim (Canada) Ltd., Patent Department, 2100 Cunard Street, Laval, Québec H7S 2G5 (CA).

(81) Designated States: AE, AL, AM, AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BR, BY, CA, CH, CN, CU, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, GB, GD, GE, GH, GM, HR, HU, ID, IL, IN, IS, JP, KE, KG, KP, KR, KZ, LC, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LV, MD, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, NO, NZ, PL, PT, RO, RU, SD, SE, SG, SI, SK, SL, TJ, TM, TR, TT, UA, UG, US, UZ, VN, YU, ZA, ZW, ARIPO patent (GH, GM, KE, LS, MW, SD, SL, SZ, UG, ZW), Eurasian patent (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European patent (AT, BE, CH, CY, DE, DK, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, GW, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).

Published

With international search report.

Before the expiration of the time limit for amending the claims and to be republished in the event of the receipt of amendments.

(88) Date of publication of the international search report:

25 May 2000 (25.05.00)

(54) Title: HEPATITIS C INHIBITOR TRI-PEPTIDES

(57) Abstract

Racemates, diastereoisomers and optical isomers of a compound of formula (I) wherein B is H, a C₆ or C₁₀ aryl, C₇₋₁₆ aralkyl; Het or (lower alkyl)-Het, all of which optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl; C₁₋₆ alkoxy; C₁₋₆ alkanoyl; hydroxy; hydroxyalkyl; halo; haloalkyl; nitro; cyano; cyanoalkyl; amino optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl; amido; or (lower alkyl)amide; or B is an acyl derivative of formula R₄-C(O)-; a carboxyl of formula R₄-O-C(O)-; an amide of formula R₄-N(R₅)-C(O)-; a thioamide of formula R₄-N(R₅)-C(S)-; or a sulfonyl of formula R₄-SO₂; R₅ is H or C₁₋₆ alkyl; and Y is H or C₁₋₆ alkyl; R³ is C₁₋₈ alkyl, C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl, or C₄₋₁₀ alkylcycloalkyl, all optionally substituted with hydroxy, C₁₋₆ alkoxy, C₁₋₆ thoography

$$\begin{array}{c|c}
B & & & \\
N & & & \\
O & & & \\
N & & & \\
O & & & \\
N & & & \\
O & & \\$$

thioalkyl, amido, (lower alkyl)amido, C_6 or C_{10} aryl, or C_{7-16} aralkyl; R_2 is CH_2-R_{20} , NH_{-R20} , $O-R_{20}$ or $S-R_{20}$, wherein R_{20} is a saturated or unsaturated C_{3-7} cycloalkyl or C_{4-10} (alkylcycloalkyl), all of which being optionally mono-, di- or tri-substituted with R_{21} , or R_{20} is a C_6 or C_{10} aryl or C_{7-14} aralkyl optionally substituted, or R_{20} is Het or (lower alkyl)—Het, both optionally substituted, Het or (lower alkyl)—Het; carboxyl; carboxy(lower alkyl); C_6 or C_{10} aryl, C_{7-14} aralkyl or Het, said aryl, aralkyl or Het being optionally substituted; and R^1 is H; C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{3-7} cycloalkyl, C_{2-6} alkenyl, or C_{2-6} alkynyl, all optionally substituted with halogen; or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or ester thereof.

FOR THE PURPOSES OF INFORMATION ONLY

Codes used to identify States party to the PCT on the front pages of pamphlets publishing international applications under the PCT.

AL	Albania	ES	Spain	LS	Lesotho	SI	Slovenia
AM	Armenia	FI	Finland	LT	Lithuania	SK	Slovakia
AT	Austria	FR	France	LU	Luxembourg	SN	Senegal
AU	Australia	GA	Gabon	LV	Latvia	SZ	Swaziland
ΑZ	Azerbaijan	GB	United Kingdom	MC	Monaco	TD	Chad
BA	Bosnia and Herzegovina	GE	Georgia	MD	Republic of Moldova	TG	Togo
BB	Barbados	GII	Ghana	MG	Madagascar	TJ	Tajikistan
BE	Belgium	GN	Guinea	MK	The former Yugoslav	TM	Turkmenistan
BF	Burkina Faso	GR	Greece		Republic of Macedonia	TR	Turkey
BG	Bulgaria	HU	Hungary	ML	Mali	TT	Trinidad and Tobago
BJ	Benin	lE	Ireland	MN	Mongolia	UA	Ukraine
BR	Brazil	IL	Israel	MR	Mauritania	UG	Uganda
BY	Belarus	IS	Iceland	MW	Malawi	US	United States of America
CA	Canada	IT	Italy	MX	Mexico	UZ	Uzbekistan
CF	Central African Republic	JP	Јарал	NE	Niger	VN	Viet Nam
CG	Congo	KE	Kenya	NL	Netherlands	YU	Yugoslavia
CH	Switzerland	KG	Kyrgyzstan	NO	Norway	zw	Zimbabwe
Ci	Côte d'Ivoire	KP	Democratic People's	NZ	New Zealand		
CM	Cameroon		Republic of Korea	PL	Poland		
CN	China	KR	Republic of Korea	PT	Portugal		
CU	Cuba	KZ	Kazakstan	RO	Romania		
CZ	Czech Republic	LC	Saint Lucia	RU	Russian Federation		
DE	Germany	LI	Liechtenstein	SD	Sudan		
DK	Denmark	LK	Sri Lanka	SE	Sweden		
EE	Estonia	LR	Liberia	SG	Singapore		

mel Application No PCT/CA 99/00736

A CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER IPC 7 C07K5/083 C07I C07K5/087 A61K38/06 C07C229/48 C12P41/00 According to international Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC B. FIELDS SEARCHED Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols) IPC 7 CO7K A61K CO7C C12P Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practical, search terms used) C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT Category * Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages Relevant to daim No. P,X WO 99 07733 A (BOEHRINGER INGELHEIM CA LTD 1,4,10, ; RANCOURT JEAN (CA); SIMONEAU BRUNO (C) 16-24, 18 February 1999 (1999-02-18) 26-29, 36,37, 40,66, 74, 78-81. 84-87 The whole document; see especially claims 12-15 and Table 4 -/--X Further documents are listed in the continuation of box C. X Patent family members are listed in annex. Special categories of cited documents: "I" later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the "A" document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance Invention "E" earlier document but published on or after the international "X" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to filing date "L" document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified) involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone "Y" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such docu-"O" document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means ments, such combination being obvious to a person sidled in the art. "P" document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed "&" document member of the same patent family Date of the actual completion of the international search Date of mailing of the International search report 29 MARCH 2000 23 February 2000 Name and mailing address of the ISA Authorized officer European Patent Office, P.B. 5818 Patentiaan 2 NL – 2280 HV Rijewijk Tel. (+31-70) 340-2040, Tx. 31 651 epo ni, Groenendijk, M

Fax: (+31-70) 340-3016

Form PCT/ISA/210 (second sheet) (July 1992)

Inter and Application No PCT/CA 99/00736

		PCT/CA 99/00736			
`	ation) DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT				
stegory *	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.			
K	GAUCHER A ET AL: "Palladium (0) Catalyzed Tandem Alkylation and SN@? Cyclization of 1,4-Dichlorobut-2-ene by the N-(Diphenylmethylene)acetonitrile. A Stereoselective Synthesis of 1-Aminocyclopropanecarboxylic Acids" TETRAHEDRON LETTERS,NL,ELSEVIER SCIENCE PUBLISHERS, AMSTERDAM, vol. 36, no. 17, page 2979-2982 XP004028172 ISSN: 0040-4039 page 2979	79			
(DE 196 00 034 A (HUELS CHEMISCHE WERKE AG)	79			
,	3 July 1997 (1997-07-03) See page 4, formula 5, example 1; claim 2	82,83			
	See page 4, Tormora 3, example 1, craffin 2	02,03			
	FLICHE E.A.: "Enantioselective synthesis of (1R,2S) and (1S,2S) dehydrocoronamic acid"	79			
	SYNTHETIC COMMUNICATIONS, vol. 24, no. 20, 1994, pages 2873-2876,				
(XP000857016 the whole document	82,83			
	CHEN E.A.: "Chirally selective hydrolysis of D,L amino esters by alkaline protease" J.CHEM.SOC.CHEM.COMMUN., vol. 20, 1986, pages 1514-1516, XP002131118 the whole document	82,83			
Y	CHEN E.A.: "Kinetic resolution of esters of amino acids in t-butanol containing 5% water catalyzed by a stable industrial alkaline protease" CHIRALITY, vol. 6, 1994, pages 572-576, XP000876982 the whole document	82,83			
A	WO 98 17679 A (DEININGER DAVID D ; MURCKO MARK A (US); VERTEX PHARMA (US); FARMER) 30 April 1998 (1998-04-30) cited in the application the whole document	1-81, 84-87			

Interr. nal Application No PCT/CA 99/00736

Continuation) DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT tegory* Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages LLINAS—BRUNET M ET AL: "Peptide—based inhibitors of the hepatitis C virus serine protease" BIOORGANIC & MEDICINAL CHEMISTRY LETTERS, GB, OXFORD, vol. 8, no. 13, page 1713—1718 XP004137115 ISSN: 0960—894X the whole document GERSHONOV E.A.: "1-Aminocyclobutanecarboxylic acid derivatives as novel structural elements in bioactive peptides: application to tuftsin analogs" JOURNAL OF MEDICINAL CHEMISTRY, vol. 39, no. 24, 1996, pages 4833—4843, XP002123142 MASHINGTON US figure 1 OGAMA, TOMOHISA ET AL: "2,3—Methanophenylalanine and.alpha.,beta.— dehydrophenylalanine derivatives as chymotrypsin inhibitor" PEPT. CHEM. (1990), VOLUME DATE 1989, 27TH, 379—82, XP000856307	` (C	POMINE DE LA COMPANIA DEL COMPANIA DEL COMPANIA DE LA COMPANIA DE LA COMPANIA DEL	PCT/CA 99/00736
LLINAS-BRUNET M ET AL: "Peptide-based inhibitors of the hepatitis C virus serine protease" BIOORGANIC & MEDICINAL CHEMISTRY LETTERS,GB,OXFORD, vol. 8, no. 13, page 1713-1718 XP004137115 ISSN: 0960-894X the whole document GERSHONOV E.A.: "1-Aminocyclobutanecarboxylic acid derivatives as novel structural elements in bioactive peptides: application to tuftsin analogs" JOURNAL OF MEDICINAL CHEMISTRY, vol. 39, no. 24, 1996, pages 4833-4843, XP002123142 WASHINGTON US figure 1 OGAWA, TOMOHISA ET AL: "2,3-Methanophenylalanine and.alpha,.beta dehydrophenylalanine derivatives as chymotrypsin inhibitor" PEPT. CHEM. (1990), VOLUME DATE 1989.			
inhibitors of the hepatitis C virus serine protease" BIOORGANIC & MEDICINAL CHEMISTRY LETTERS,GB,OXFORD, vol. 8, no. 13, page 1713-1718 XPO04137115 ISSN: 0960-894X the whole document GERSHONOV E.A.: "1-Aminocyclobutanecarboxylic acid derivatives as novel structural elements in bioactive peptides: application to tuftsin analogs" JOURNAL OF MEDICINAL CHEMISTRY, vol. 39, no. 24, 1996, pages 4833-4843, XPO02123142 WASHINGTON US figure 1 OGAWA, TOMOHISA ET AL: "2,3-Methanophenylalanine and.alpha.,.beta dehydrophenylalanine derivatives as chymotrypsin inhibitor" PEPT. CHEM. (1990), VOLUME DATE 1989.	y	or decembers, with substitution, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
"1-Aminocyclobutanecarboxylic acid derivatives as novel structural elements in bioactive peptides: application to tuftsin analogs" JOURNAL OF MEDICINAL CHEMISTRY, vol. 39, no. 24, 1996, pages 4833-4843, XP002123142 WASHINGTON US figure 1 OGAWA, TOMOHISA ET AL: "2,3-Methanophenylalanine and.alpha.,.beta dehydrophenylalanine derivatives as chymotrypsin inhibitor" PEPT. CHEM. (1990), VOLUME DATE 1989.		inhibitors of the hepatitis C virus serine protease" BIOORGANIC & MEDICINAL CHEMISTRY LETTERS,GB,OXFORD, vol. 8, no. 13, page 1713-1718 XP004137115 ISSN: 0960-894X	
"2,3-Methanophenylalanine and.alpha.,.beta dehydrophenylalanine derivatives as chymotrypsin inhibitor" PEPT. CHEM. (1990), VOLUME DATE 1989		"1-Aminocyclobutanecarboxylic acid derivatives as novel structural elements in bioactive peptides: application to tuftsin analogs" JOURNAL OF MEDICINAL CHEMISTRY, vol. 39, no. 24, 1996, pages 4833-4843, XP002123142 WASHINGTON US	
		"2,3-Methanophenylalanine and.alpha.,.beta dehydrophenylalanine derivatives as chymotrypsin inhibitor" PEPT. CHEM. (1990), VOLUME DATE 1989	
		·	

Inte...ational application No.

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

PCT/CA 99/00736

Box I Observations where certain claims were found unsearchable (Continuation of item 1 of first sheet)
This International Search Report has not been established in respect of certain claims under Article 17(2)(a) for the following reasons:
Claims Nos.: because they relate to subject matter not required to be searched by this Authority, namely: Remark: Although claims 67-72 are directed to a method of treatment of the human/animal body, the search has been carried out and based on the alleged effects of the compound/composition.
2. X Claims Nos.: because they relate to parts of the International Application that do not comply with the prescribed requirements to such an extent that no meaningful International Search can be carried out, specifically: Claims: 74-77, 80, 81, 84 (all partially)
see FURTHER INFORMATION sheet PCT/ISA/210
3. Claims Nos.: because they are dependent claims and are not drafted in accordance with the second and third sentences of Rule 6.4(a).
Box II Observations where unity of invention is lacking (Continuation of item 2 of first sheet)
This International Searching Authority found multiple inventions in this international application, as follows: see additional sheet -
As all required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant, this International Search Report covers all searchable claims.
2. As all searchable claims could be searched without effort justifying an additional fee, this Authority did not invite payment of any additional fee.
3. As only some of the required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant, this International Search Report covers only those claims for which fees were paid, specifically claims Nos.:
4. No required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant. Consequently, this International Search Report is restricted to the invention first mentioned in the claims; it is covered by claims Nos.:
Remark on Protest . The additional search fees were accompanied by the applicant's protest. X No protest accompanied the payment of additional search fees.

FURTHER INFORMATION CONTINUED FROM PCT/ISA/ 210

Continuation of Box 1.2

Claims Nos.: 74-77,80,81,84(all partially)

Present claims 74-77,80,81 and 84 relate to a process for the preparation of a (serine) protease analog without defining a structure having said activity.

The application provides support within the meaning of Article 6 PCT and/or disclosure within the meaning of Article 5 PCT for (the preparation of) only a very limited number of such compounds, that is the compounds defined by the formula of claim 1. In the present case, said claims so lack support, and the application so lacks disclosure, that a meaningful search over the whole of the claimed scope is impossible. Independent of the above reasoning, the claims also lack clarity (Article 6 PCT). An attempt is made to define the prepared products by reference to a result to be achieved, that is their activity. Again, this lack of clarity in the present case is such as to render a meaningful search over the whole of the claimed scope impossible. Consequently, the search for the subject-matter of said claims 74-77,80,81 and 84 has been carried out for those parts of the claims which appear to be clear, supported and disclosed, namely those parts relating to the preparation of compounds of the formula I of claim 1.

The applicant's attention is drawn to the fact that claims, or parts of claims, relating to inventions in respect of which no international search report has been established need not be the subject of an international preliminary examination (Rule 66.1(e) PCT). The applicant is advised that the EPO policy when acting as an International Preliminary Examining Authority is normally not to carry out a preliminary examination on matter which has not been searched. This is the case irrespective of whether or not the claims are amended following receipt of the search report or during any Chapter II procedure.

FURTHER INFORMATION CONTINUED FROM PCT/ISA/ 210

This International Searching Authority found multiple (groups of) inventions in this international application, as follows:

1. Claims: 1-81,84-87

Compounds of formula I of claim 1, their preparation and use; compounds of claim 79 and their use in the preparation of compounds of formula I $\,$

2. Claims: 82,83

Process for the resolution of enantiomers as defined in the claims 82 and 83

Information on patent family members

Intern. nal Application No PCT/CA 99/00736

Patent document cited in search report		Publication date		atent family member(s)	Publication date
WO 9907733	A	18-02-1999	AU	8795698 A	01-03-1999
DE 19600034	Α	03-07-1997	NONE		
WO 9817679	A	30-04-1998	AU BR CZ EP NO PL	5147798 A 9712544 A 9901340 A 0932617 A 991832 A 332872 A	15-05-1998 19-10-1999 11-08-1999 04-08-1999 17-06-1999 25-10-1999

Form PCT/ISA/210 (patent family annex) (July 1992)

	,							1
	•							
					ŧ	-	4	
•								£
,								
•								
6.								
T .								1
W								
·								
ľ								